OWNER'S HANDBOOK



CITROËN C5

CITROËN

MyCITROËN

On-line owner's handbook

You can find your handbook on the CITROËN website, under the heading "MyCitroën".

This personal space provides you with information on your products and services, a direct and special contact with CITROËN and becomes a space tailored for you.

Referring to the owner's handbook on-line also gives you access to the latest information available, easily identified by the bookmarks, associated with this pictogram:



If the heading "MyCitroën" is not available on the public website for your country, you can find your handbook at the following address:
http://service.citroen.com

Select:
- the link in "Private customer access",
- the language,
- the model,
- the edition date appropriate for the date of registration of your vehicle.

You will find your handbook, presented in the same way as the paper version.

We draw your attention to the following...

Your vehicle is fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on the trim level, version and the specifications for the country in which it is sold.

The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories which are not recommended by CITROËN may result in a failure of your vehicle's electronic system. Please note this specific warning and contact a CITROËN dealer to be shown the recommended equipment and accessories.

Key

 safety warning

 contributes to the protection of the environment

 refer to the page indicated

CITROËN has a presence on every continent,

a complete product range,

bringing together technology and a permanent spirit of innovation,

for a modern and creative approach to mobility.

We thank you and congratulate you on your choice.

At the wheel of your new vehicle,

getting to know each system,

each control, each setting,

makes your trips, your journeys

more comfortable and more enjoyable.

Happy motoring!

CONTENTS

FAMILIARISATION 4 ➔ 23

ECO-DRIVING 24 ➔ 25

I - MONITORING 26 ➔ 42

Instrument panels 26
Trip computer 29
Warning and indicator lamps 32
Adjustment buttons 42

II - MULTIFUNCTION SCREENS 43 ➔ 46

Monochrome screen C 43
Colour screen (eMyWay) 45

III - COMFORT 47 ➔ 66

Ventilation 47
Mono-zone digital air conditioning 49
Dual-zone digital air conditioning 52
Programmable heating 56
Front seats 60
Rear seats 64
Mirrors 65
Steering wheel adjustment 66

IV - ACCESS 67 ➔ 85

Remote control key 67
Alarm 73
Electric windows 75
Doors 77
Boot 79
Sunroof (Saloon) 82
Panoramic sunroof (Tourer) 83
Fuel tank 84
Misfuel prevention (Diesel) 85

V - VISIBILITY 86 ➔ 97

Lighting controls 86
Automatic illumination of headlamps 88
Headlamp adjustment 89
Directional lighting 90
Wiper controls 92
Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers 93
Courtesy lamps 94
Interior mood lighting 96

VI - FITTINGS 98 ➔ 104

Interior fittings 98
Mats 99
Front armrest 99
Boot fittings 101

VII - CHILD SAFETY 105 ➔ 113

Child seats 105
ISOFIX child seats 109
Child lock 113

CONTENTS

VIII - SAFETY 114 ➔ 125

Direction indicators 114
Hazard warning lamps 114
Horn 114
Emergency or assistance call 114
Tyre under-inflation detection 115
Braking assistance systems 117
Trajectory control systems 118
Seat belts 119
Airbags 122

IX - DRIVING 126 ➔ 160

Parking brake 126
Electric parking brake 127
Hill start assist 134
Manual gearbox 135
Gear shift indicator 136
6-speed electronic gearbox system 137
Stop & Start 141
Automatic gearbox 144
Fixed centred controls steering wheel 148
Speed limiter 150
Cruise control 152
Lane departure warning system 154
Parking space sensor 155
Parking sensors 157
Reversing camera (Tourer) 158
"Hydractive III +" electronic suspension 159

X - CHECKS 161 ➔ 173

Bonnet 162
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 164
Petrol engines 165
Diesel engines 167
Checking levels 170
Checks 172

XI - PRACTICAL INFORMATION 174 ➔ 206

Temporary puncture repair kit 174
Changing a wheel 177
Changing a bulb 181
Changing a fuse 191
Battery 196
Energy economy mode 198
Towing the vehicle 199
Towing a trailer 200
Roof bars 201
Very cold protection 202
Cold climate screen 203
Accessories 205

XII - TECHNICAL DATA 207 ➔ 222

Petrol engines 207
Petrol weights 208
Diesel engines 210
Diesel weights 212
Diesel weights - commercial versions (Tourer) 216
Dimensions 217
Identification markings 221

XIII - AUDIO and TELEMATICS 223 ➔ 298

Emergency or assistance 223
eMyWay 225
Audio system 279

VISUAL SEARCH 299 ➔ 304

ALPHABETICAL INDEX 305 ➔ 309

Stop & Start

This system puts the engine temporarily into standby during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, etc...). The engine restarts automatically as soon as you want to move off.

Stop & Start reduces fuel consumption, exhaust emissions and noise when stationary.

⏭ 141

Xenon dual-function directional headlamps

This system automatically provides you with extra visibility on bends. This lighting is linked with the cornering lighting which maximises the illuminated area at intersections and when parking.

⏭ 89

Panoramic sunroof (Tourer)

This provides you with perfect brightness in the passenger compartment.

Glass sunroof (Saloon)

This also provides you with improved ventilation in the passenger compartment.

⏭ 82-83



Lane departure warning system

This driving aid warns you when you cross a lane marking unintentionally.

⏭ 154

Parking sensors (visual + audible)

This system warns you if an obstacle is detected in front of or behind the vehicle.

⏭ 157

Tyre under-inflation detection

This system checks the pressure of the tyres automatically while driving.

⏭ 115

Remote control key



A. Key release / storage.
B. Normal locking of the vehicle (a single press) or deadlocking the vehicle (two presses in succession).
C. Guide-me-home lighting.
D. Unlocking the vehicle.

⏭ 67

Opening the boot





☞ Press upwards on lever **E**.

The boot automatically locks when the vehicle is moving at a speed of over 6 mph (10 km/h), even if automatic central locking is deactivated. It is unlocked when a door is opened or when the central locking button is pressed (speed lower than 6 mph (10 km/h)).

⏭ 79-80

Fuel tank



To open the fuel filler flap, press on it at top left, then pull from the rear edge.

Locking filler cap

☞ Turn the key a quarter turn to lock and unlock the filler cap.

When refuelling, place the cap on hook **F**.

Tank capacity: approximately 71 litres.

⏭ 84

Opening the bonnet



The bonnet release should only be operated when the vehicle is stationary.

☞ Open the driver's door.

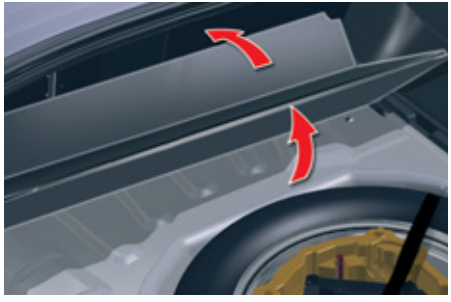
☞ Pull release lever **A** to unlock.



☞ Lift safety catch **B**, then raise the bonnet.

⏭ 162

Spare wheel



Saloon



Tourer

The tools are to be found in a protective holder inside the spare wheel.

⏭ 177

Access to the spare wheel

To access the spare wheel:

☞ Saloon: raise the boot floor and fold it in two.

☞ Tourer: raise the boot floor and hook it using the retractable handle, Secure the hook to the top part of the boot.

☞ To remove the spare wheel, detach the strap then push the wheel forwards, before lifting it out.

Temporary puncture repair kit



The kit is a complete system including a compressor and a sealant cartridge.

⏭ 174

Dual-zone digital air conditioning
This air conditioning system enables you to adjust the comfort levels of the driver and the front passenger independently.

⏭ 52

Audio and communication systems
These systems benefit from the latest technology: MP3 compatible audio system, Bluetooth® system, eMyWay.

⏭ 225, 279



Parking space sensor
The "Parking space sensor" function assists you in finding a parking space.

⏭ 155

Electric parking brake
The electric parking brake combines automatic application when the engine is switched off, and automatic release when the vehicle is set in motion (automatic function activated by default).
Manual locking/unlocking is possible.

⏭ 127



1. Electric windows/door mirrors/child safety controls.
2. Memorisation of driver's seat settings.
3. Bonnet release.
4. Steering mounted controls:
   - Speed limiter
   - Cruise control
5. Horn.
6. Audio/telematic steering mounted controls.
7. Driver's airbag.
8. Navigation controls for the audio/telematics and trip computer systems.
9. Driver's air vent.
10. Instrument panel.
11. Driver's air vent.
12. Stop & Start control.
13. Windscreen wiper/screenwash control stalk.
14. Ignition switch.
15. ESP / parking sensors/ lane departure warning system controls.
16. Steering column adjustment.
17. Knee airbag.
18. Oddments tray or programmable heater controls.
    Fusebox access flap.
19. Checks/Anti-intrusion alarm/Parking space sensor controls.
20. Lighting/Direction indicators/Foglamp/Voice recognition control stalk.
21. Manual headlamp height adjustment.



1. Sunshine sensor.
2. Soft diffusion air conditioning adjustment knob.
3. Passenger's airbag.
4. Side window demister.
5. Switch using the ignition key in the glovebox:
   - Passenger's airbag activation/deactivation
6. Passenger's air vents.
7. Hazard warning lamps switch.
8. Glovebox:
   - Vehicle document storage
   - Audio-video sockets
9. Doors and boot locking/unlocking control.
10. Automatic gearbox SPORT/SNOW mode controls.
11. Electric parking brake.
12. USB port.
13. Armrest with cup-holder.
14. Suspension controls:
   - Ground clearance adjustment
   - Sport mode
15. Ashtray with cigarette lighter.
16. Gear lever.
17. Storage.
18. Audio and telematics system.
19. Air conditioning controls.
20. Storage.
21. Multifunction screen.
22. Emergency or assistance call.



Instrument panel menu.

Multifunction screen menu.

Activation of voice recognition or reminder of navigation guidance.

MODE: selection of the type of information displayed in multifunction screen.

Cruise control and speed limiter.

Audio.

Telephone.

The **"SET +, PAUSE, VOL+, MUTE"** buttons have touch identification to make them easier to use.

⏭ 148-149

Front seats

Manual adjustments



A. Adjustment of the backrest angle.
B. Adjustment of the seat height.
C. Heated seat control.
D. Longitudinal adjustment of the seat.
E. Adjustment of the backrest lumbar support.

⏭ 60

Electric adjustments



1. Seat cushion height, angle and longitudinal adjustments.
2. Adjustment of the backrest angle.
3. Adjustment of top of backrest.
4. Adjustment of lumbar support, height and level.
5. Massage function.
6. Heated seat control.

⏭ 61

Seat belt height adjustment



The **correct position** of the upper seat belt anchorage places the belt across the middle of the shoulder.

☞ To adjust the seat belt for height, compress the control and **slide** it in the desired direction.

⏭ 120



Storing

This function allows you to programme and store the driver's seat and air conditioning settings.

⏭ 63

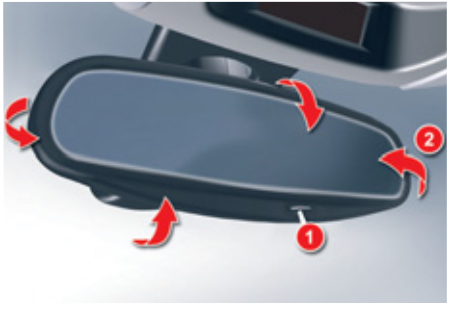
Electric door mirrors



1. **Selection of door mirror:**
   A. Left hand side.
   B. Right hand side.
   C. Foldback/Unfold.
2. **Directional control for mirror selected**.

⏭ 65

Electrochrome rear view mirror



Automatic day/night model

1. Automatic detection of the day/night mode.
2. Adjustment of the mirror.

⏭ 66

Steering column adjustment



- ☞ Release the steering wheel by pushing control lever **A** forwards.
- ☞ Adjust the height and the reach of the steering wheel, then lock the position by pulling the lever upwards.

⏭ 66

As a safety precaution, these operations must not be carried out while moving.

Lighting



Ring A

Lighting off.

AUTO Automatic illumination of headlamps.

Sidelamps.

Dipped/main beam.

☞ Pull the control stalk **towards you** to change between dipped and main beam.

Ring B

Front foglamps on.

Front foglamps and rear foglamps on.

⏭ 86

Front wipers



Control positions

2 Rapid wipe.
1 Normal wipe.
I Intermittent wipe.
0 Off.

One press downwards:

- **Auto:** Automatic wipe activated.
- Single wipe.

If the ignition has been switched off for around 1 minute, automatic wiping must be reactivated.

Screenwash

☞ Pull the wiper control stalk towards you.

⏭ 92-93

Rear wiper (Tourer)



☞ Rotate ring **C** to the desired position.

Off

Intermittent wipe

Screen wash

⏭ 92

Dual-zone digital air conditioning



Front demisting - defrosting.

Adjustment of air flow.

Adjustment of temperature on passenger's side.

Adjustment of air distribution on passenger's side.

Activation/deactivation of air conditioning.

Adjustment of temperature on driver's side.

Driver's side automatic operation.

Adjustment of air distribution on driver's side.

Rear screen and door mirrors demisting - defrosting.

Air recirculation - fresh air intake.

Passenger's side automatic operation.

It is recommended that automatic mode be used by pressing the "**AUTO**" button.

⏭ 52

Instrument panel



A. Fuel gauge and low fuel warning lamp.
B. Cruise control/speed limiter information.
C. Coolant temperature.
D. Speedometer.
E. Instrument panel screen.
F. Mileage recorder.
G. Trip mileage recorder reset button.
H. Rev counter.
I. Engine oil temperature.
J. Display of automatic gearbox information.

⏭ 26

Hazard warning lamps

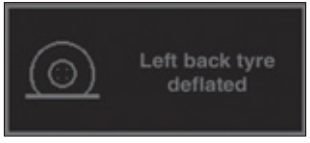


The hazard warning lamps can also be used with the ignition switched off.

⏭ 114

- When the ignition is switched on, the orange and red warning lamps come on.
- When the engine is running, these warning lamps should go off.
- If any warning lamps remain on, refer to the "Instruments and controls" section.

Tyre under-inflation detection





The tyre under-inflation detection system is a driving aid which informs you of the state of your tyres.

It does not replace either vigilance or responsibility on the part of the driver.

⏭ 115

Economy mode



After switching off the engine, some systems (radio, wipers, electric windows, sunroof, electric seats, telephone, video, interior lighting, motorised tailgate, etc.) are supplied electrically for a maximum of no more than around one hour, so as to avoid discharging the battery.

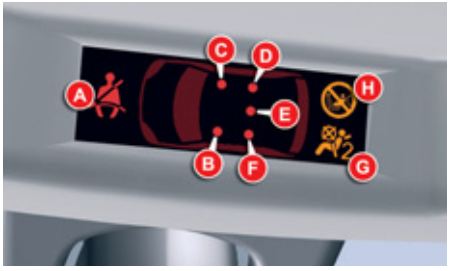
Once this period is over, a message is displayed in the instrument panel screen and the active functions are placed on standby.

These functions will be automatically reactivated when the vehicle is restarted.

This period may be reduced considerably if the battery's state of charge is low.

⏭ 198

Seat belts and front passenger's airbag



The seat belt fastened/unfastened status for each seating position is indicated by the lighting or flashing of the warning lamps linked to each position:

A. Front and/or rear seat belts not fastened/unfastened warning lamp.
B. Front left-hand seat belt warning lamp.
C. Front right-hand seat belt warning lamp.
D. Rear right-hand seat belt warning lamp.
E. Rear centre seat belt warning lamp.
F. Rear left-hand seat belt warning lamp.
G. Front passenger's airbag deactivation warning lamp.
H. Front passenger's airbag activation warning lamp.

⏭ 35, 37-38

Front passenger's airbag deactivation



To use a rearwards-facing child seat in the front passenger's seat position, the passenger's airbag must first be deactivated.

To do this:

☞ With the ignition switched off, insert the key into the switch **I**.

☞ Turn the key to the **"OFF"** position; the passenger's airbag is deactivated.

The front passenger's airbag deactivation warning lamp **G** comes on when the ignition is switched on.

⏭ 123

Child lock



This deactivates the controls in the rear of the vehicle, both for the rear windows and for opening the rear doors from the inside. The electric child child lock is activated by pressing button **J**.

The activation of the function is indicated by a message in the instrument panel screen and the lamp in button **J**.

⏭ 113

Electric parking brake



Automatic operation

The electric parking brake releases automatically and progressively when you press the accelerator. With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is applied automatically when the engine is switched off.**



Before leaving the vehicle, check that warning lamp **A (!)** (red) in the instrument panel is on fixed (not flashing) and that warning lamp **P** (red) in control lever **B** is on.

> **!** Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.

⏭ 127



Manual operation

The MANUAL application/release of the parking brake is always possible by pulling/pushing control lever **B**, pressing the brake pedal at the same time.

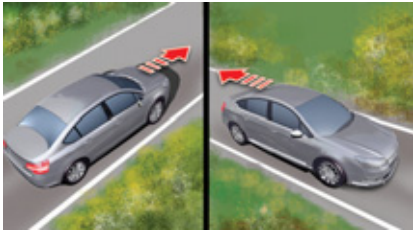


Before leaving the vehicle, check that warning lamp **A (!)** (red) in the instrument panel is on fixed (not flashing) and that warning lamp **P** (red) in control lever **B** is on.

> **!** If you leave the vehicle while the engine is still running, apply the parking brake manually.

⏭ 128

Hill start assist



To facilitate moving off on a gradient, your vehicle is equipped with a system which keeps it immobilised for a short time (about 2 seconds), the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

This function is only active when:

- The vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal.
- In certain conditions on a gradient.
- With the driver's door closed.

> **!** Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held in the temporary immobilisation hill start assist phase.

⏭ 134

Speed limiter



This system allows you to choose a maximum speed that you do not wish to exceed.

Selection of **"LIMIT":** Activation of speed limiter mode.

"SET +": Increase the maximum speed.

"SET -": Reduce the maximum speed.

Suspension or resumption of mode.

Deactivation.
The chosen speed is memorised.

The chosen speed must be **higher than 20 mph (30 km/h)**.

⏭ 150

Cruise control



This system allows you to maintain a constant vehicle speed programmed by the driver.

Selection of "**CRUISE**": Activation of cruise control mode.

"SET": Memorisation of the speed (system paused).

"SET +": Increase the memorised speed (system ON).

"SET -": Reduce the memorised speed (system ON).

Suspension or resumption of mode.

Deactivation.

⏭ 152

Instrument panel screen





The speed limiter or cruise control mode is displayed in the instrument panel screen when selected.

Speed limiter

Cruise control

Cruise control is active on the **higher gears** of the gearbox. The chosen speed must be **higher than 25 mph (40 km/h)**.

Direction indicators - "Motorway" function



☞ Move the stalk briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

⏭ 114

Ignition switch



- **S: Steering lock**
  To release the steering, turn the wheel slightly while turning the key, but without forcing.
- **M: Drive (Ignition on)**
- **D: Starter**
  Release the key as soon as the engine starts. Do not operate the starter when the engine is running.

⏭ 70

6-speed electronic gearbox system



R Reverse
N Neutral
A Automated mode
M Manual mode
Using paddles **1 "+"** and **2 "-"**:
- changing gear in manual mode,
- temporary manual control in automated mode.

SPORT programme

☞ With the gear lever at **A** and the engine running, press button **3**.

⏭ 137-140

Automatic gearbox



Positions
P: Park.
R: Reverse gear.
N: Neutral.
D: Automatic mode.
M: Sequential mode.

The automatic gearbox offers:
- **Operation in auto-active mode**, with **automatic** adaptation to your style of driving as well as to the road profile (**Position D**).
- **Operation in sequential mode**, with manual gear changing (**Position M**).
- **Operation in automatic SPORT mode (Position D)** and press button **A**.
- **Operation in automatic SNOW mode (Position D)** and press button **B**.

! For safety:

The gear lever can only be disengaged from position **P** if you are pressing the brake pedal.

When a door is opened, an audible signal sounds if the gear lever is not in position **P**.

In all circumstances, ensure that position **P** is selected before leaving the vehicle.

⏭ 144-147

Stop & Start

Engine going into STOP mode

ECO The **"ECO"** warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine is put into standby:

- **with the 6-speed electronic gearbox system**: at speeds below 4 mph (6 km/h), press the brake pedal or put the gear lever in position **N**.

In certain circumstances, STOP mode may not be available; the **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes for a few seconds then goes off.

⏭ 141

Engine going into START mode

ECO The **"ECO"** warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts:

- with the gear lever in position **A** or **M**, release the brake pedal,
- or with the gear lever in position **N** and the brake pedal released, select position **A** or **M**,
- or select reverse.

In certain circumstances, START mode may be invoked automatically; the **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

⏭ 142

Deactivation / Reactivation



You can deactivate the system at any time by pressing the **"ECO OFF"** switch; the warning lamp in the button comes on.

The system is reactivated automatically every time the engine is started using the key.

Before refuelling or doing anything under the bonnet, you must switch off the ignition using the key.

⏭ 142

Parking space sensor



You can select the "Parking space sensor" by pressing button **A**, direction indicator activated on the side of the space to be measured, with a speed lower than 12 mph (20 km/h) and at a distance of less than 1.5 m from the space.

Fixed illumination of the warning lamp indicates that this function is selected.

⏭ 155

Parking sensors (visual and audible)



You can activate/deactivate the parking sensors by pressing button **B**. When the parking sensors are deactivated, the warning lamp in button **B** comes on.

⏭ 157

Lane departure warning system



Use of this system is recommended on motorways and dual carriageways, and operates only at speeds above 50 mph (80 km/h).

Pressing button **C** activates the function, the warning lamp in the button comes on.

The system does not alert you if one of your direction indicators is operating and for approximately 20 seconds after the direction indicator has stopped.

⏭ 154

ECO-DRIVING

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions.

Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently, change up without waiting and drive by changing up quite soon. If your vehicle has the system, the gear shift indicator invites you to change up; it is displayed in the instrument panel, follow its instructions.

With an automatic or electronic gearbox, stay in Drive **"D"** or Auto **"A"**, according to the type of gearbox, without pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions and also helps reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.

Above 30 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.

Remember to make use of equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof and window blinds...).

Switch off the air conditioning, unless it has automatic digital regulation, as soon as the desired temperature is attained.

Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if not automatic.

Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the level of light does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game...), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.

Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.

Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer...). Use a roof box in preference.

Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.

Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Don't forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter...) and observe the schedule of operations recommended by the manufacturer.

When refuelling, do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the nozzle to avoid any overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1 800 miles (3 000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.



INSTRUMENT PANELS - PETROL AND DIESEL - MANUAL AND AUTOMATIC GEARBOX

Panel grouping together the dials and vehicle operation indicator and warning lamps.

A. Fuel gauge

B. Indicator:

- Coolant temperature
- Cruise control/Speed limiter information

C. Speedometer

D. Rev counter

E. Indicator:

- Engine oil temperature
- Gear lever position and gear engaged (Automatic gearbox)

F. Controls:

- Lighting dimmer
- Resetting to zero of trip mileage computer and maintenance indicator

G. Instrument panel screen indicating:

- Depending on the page selected with the left-hand thumb wheel on the steering wheel:
  - Digital speed repeater
  - Trip computer
  - Navigation (guidance) information
  - Display of message alerts
  - Engine oil level check
  - Service indicator
- Permanently:
  - Trip mileage recorder
  - Total mileage recorder



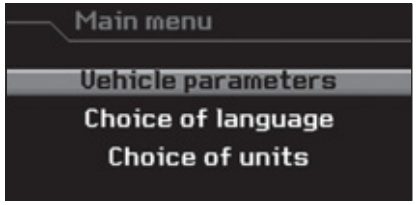


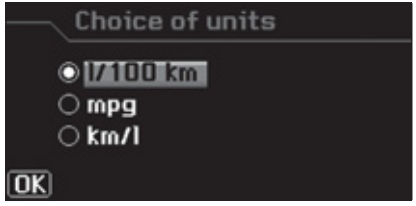
Main menu

The instrument screen **A** is located in the centre of the instrument panel.

- With the vehicle stationary, you can access the main menu of the screen by quickly pressing on the left-hand thumb wheel **B** on the steering wheel.
- Whilst driving, the message **"Action impossible whilst driving"** is displayed on the instrument panel if you try to open the main menu.

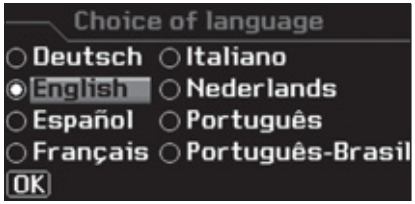
The main menu allows you to programme certain vehicle and instrument panel screen functions:





"Choice of units" menu

This allows you to choose metric or imperial units.



"Choice of language" menu

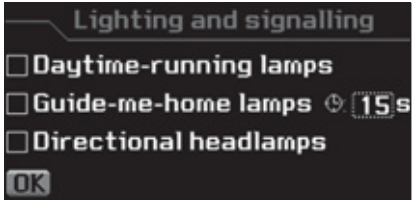
This allows you to choose the display and voice recognition language.



"Vehicle parameters" menu

This allows you to access the parameters relating to:

- The vehicle lighting.
- The comfort levels in the vehicle.



"Lighting" menu

Once you have selected this menu, you can:

- Activate/deactivate the lighting of the daytime running lamps*.
- Activate/deactivate the guide-me-home lighting and adjust its duration.
- Activate/deactivate the dual-function Xenon directional headlamps.



"Comfort" menu

Once you have selected this menu, you can:

- Activate/deactivate the driver's welcome lighting function.
- Select unlocking of all the doors or just the driver's door.
- Activate/deactivate automatic operation of the electric parking brake.

* Depending on country.

TRIP COMPUTER

System which provides current information concerning your journey (range, consumption, etc.)



Information displays





The trip computer is displayed in the instrument panel screen.

☞ Turn the left-hand thumb wheel **A** on the steering wheel to display the various trip computer tabs in succession:

- the current information tab is displayed in zone **B** of the instrument panel screen, with:
  - the range,
  - the current fuel consumption,
  - the digital speed reading or the Stop & Start time counter.
- the trip **"1"** tab is displayed in zone **C** of the instrument panel screen, with:
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the average speed,

  for the first trip.
- the trip **"2"** tab is displayed in zone **C** of the instrument panel screen, with:
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the average speed,

  for the second trip.

Trip zero reset



☞ When the trip required is displayed, press the left-hand thumb wheel on the steering wheel for more than two seconds.

Trips **"1"** and **"2"** are independent but their use is identical.

For example, trip **"1"** can be used for daily figures and trip **"2"** for monthly figures.

I

A few definitions (trip computer)



Range
(miles or km)

This indicates the distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank in relation to the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled.

This value may vary following a change in the style of driving or the relief, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 20 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed. After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed when it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).

If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Current fuel consumption
(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

This is the average fuel consumption during the last few seconds.

This function is only displayed from 20 mph (30 km/h).



Average fuel consumption
(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

This is the average fuel consumption since the last trip computer zero reset.



Average speed
(mph or km/h)

This is the average speed calculated since the last trip computer zero reset (ignition on).



Distance travelled
(miles or km)

This indicates the distance travelled since the last trip computer zero reset.



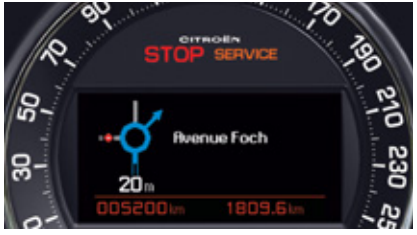
Stop & Start time counter
(minutes / seconds or hours / minutes)

If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.

It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key.

Return to the main instrument panel screen display

Successive rotations of the left-hand thumb wheel on the steering wheel allow you to return to the main instrument panel screen display (vehicle speed), via the navigation information screen, then the screen displaying only the total mileage and the trip mileage (bottom of screen).



Display of navigation information on instrument panel screen

You can display navigation information on the instrument panel screen by rotating the left-hand thumb wheel on the steering wheel.



Log of alerts

This function allows you to display the log of alerts.

☞ Press on button **A**.

The following messages appear consecutively on the instrument panel screen:

- Tyre pressure check.
- Service indicator reminder.
- Display of message alerts.
- Oil level check.

I

Warning and indicator lamps

Visual indicators which inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction or fault (warning lamp) or of the operation of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamp).

When the ignition is switched on

Certain warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

When the engine is started, these warning lamps should go off.

If they remain on, before moving off, refer to the information for the warning lamp concerned.

Associated warnings

The illumination, fixed or flashing, of certain warning lamps may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

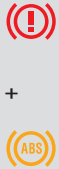
Warning lamps

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, the illumination of one of the following warning lamps indicates a malfunction or fault which requires action on the part of the driver.

The illumination of a warning lamp is always accompanied by the display of an additional message, to assist you in identifying the fault.

If you encounter any problems, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
STOP	**STOP**	fixed, associated with another warning lamp.	It is associated with a punctured tyre or the engine coolant temperature.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and call a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
SERVICE	**Service**	temporarily.	A minor fault has occurred for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the fault by reading the message shown in the screen, such as, for example: - the closing of the doors, boot, rear screen or bonnet, - the remote control battery, - the tyre pressures, - saturation of the particle emission filter (Diesel). For any other faults, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	A major fault has occurred for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the fault by reading the message shown in the screen and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Braking**	fixed, associated with the STOP warning lamp.	The braking system fluid level is too low.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Top up with brake fluid recommended by CITROËN. If the problem persists, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
+		fixed, associated with the STOP and ABS warning lamp.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system has a fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)**	fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at reduced speed and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
	**Electric parking brake**	flashing.	The electric parking brake is not applied automatically. The application/release is faulty.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park on flat level ground, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Electric parking brake fault**	fixed.	The electric parking brake has a fault.	Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay. The parking brake can be released manually. For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the "Driving" section.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
AUTO P OFF	**Deactivation of the automatic functions of the electric parking brake**	fixed.	The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" functions are deactivated or faulty.	Activate the function (according to country) via the vehicle configuration menu or contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop if automatic application / release is not possible. The parking brake can be released manually using the emergency release procedure. For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the "Driving" section.
ESP	**Dynamic stability control (ESP/ASR)**	flashing.	The ESP/ASR regulation is active.	The system optimises traction and improves the directional stability of the vehicle.
		fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel screen.	Unless it has been deactivated with the indicator lamp in the button on, the ESP/ASR system has a fault.	Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Engine autodiagnosis system	fixed.	The emission control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop without delay.
		flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	Risk of destruction of the catalytic converter. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Brake pad wear	fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen.	The brake pads are at an advanced state of wear.	Have the brake pads replaced by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Low fuel level**	fixed.	When it first comes on there remains **approximately 5 litres of fuel** in the tank.	You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel. This warning lamp wil come on every time the ignition is switched on, until a sufficient addition of fuel is made. Fuel tank capacity: 71 litres. Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel, this could damage the emission control and injection systems.
	**Maximum coolant temperature**	fixed red.	The temperature of the cooling system is too high.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop.
	**Battery charge**	fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, ...).	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Seat belt not fastened / unfastened**	fixed.	The driver and/or the front/ rear passenger has not fastened or has unfastened their seat belt.	Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.
+ 	**Seat belts not fastened / unfastened**	fixed, associated with the seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lampl.		The illuminated dots represent the not fastened / unfastened passengers. They come on: - fixed for 30 about seconds on starting the vehicle, - fixed from 0 to 12 mph (0 to 20 km/h) when driving, - flashing above 12 mph (20 km/h), accompanied by an audible signal for about 120 seconds.

I

Operation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has come into operation. It may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Left-hand direction indicator**	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk is pushed down.	
	**Right-hand direction indicator**	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk is pushed up.	
	**Hazard warning lamps**	flashing with audible signal.	The hazard warning lamps switch, located on the dashboard, has been operated.	The left-hand and right-hand direction indicators and their associated indicator lamps flash simultaneously.
	**Sidelamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Sidelamps" position.	
	**Dipped beam headlamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Dipped beam headlamps" position.	
	**Main beam headlamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is pulled towards you.	Pull the stalk to return to dipped beam headlamps.
	**Front foglamps**	fixed.	The front foglamps are switched on.	Turn the ring on the stalk rearwards twice to switch off the front foglamps.
	**Rear foglamps**	fixed.	The rear foglamps are switched on.	Turn the ring on the stalk rearwards to switch off the rear foglamps.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Diesel engine pre-heating**	fixed.	The ignition switch is at the 2nd position (ignition on).	Wait until the warning lamp has switched off before starting. The duration for which the warning lamp is on is determined by the climatic conditions.
	**Parking brake**	fixed.	The parking brake is applied or not properly released.	Release the parking brake to switch off the warning lamp, keeping your foot on the brake pedal. Observe the safety recommendations. For further information on the parking brake, refer to the "Driving" section.
		flashing.	The parking brake is not fully applied or is released.	
	**Passenger's airbag system**	fixed.	The control switch, located in the glove box, is in the **"ON"** position. The passenger's front airbag is activated. In this case, do not install a rear-facing child seat.	Turn the control switch to the **"OFF"** position to deactivate the front passenger's airbag. In this case you can install a rear-facing child seat.
ECO	**Stop & Start**	fixed.	When the vehicle stops (red lights, traffic jams, ...) the Stop & Start system has put the engine into STOP mode.	The warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically in START mode, as soon as you want to move off.
		flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.	STOP mode is temporarily unavailable. or START mode is invoked automatically.	Refer to "Driving - § Stop & Start" for special cases with STOP mode and START mode.

I

Deactivation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally. This is may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Passenger's airbag system**	fixed.	The control, located in the glove box, is set to the **OFF** position. The passenger's front airbag is deactivated. In this case you can install a "rear facing" child seat.	Set the control to the **ON** position to activate the passenger's front airbag. In this case, do not fit a child seat in the rear-facing position.
	**ESP/ASR**	fixed.	The button, located in the middle of the dashboard, is pressed. Its indicator lamp is on. The ESP/ASR is deactivated. ESP: electronic stability programme. ASR: anti-skid regulation.	Press the button to activate the ESP/ASR. Its indicator lamp switches off. The ESP/ASR system is activated automatically when the vehicle is started. If deactivated, the system is reactivated automatically from approximately 30 mph (50 km/h).

Service indicator

This information is displayed for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. It informs the driver when the next service is due, in accordance with the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

The point at which the service is due is calculated from the last indicator zero reset. It is determined by two parameters:

- the distance travelled,
- the time elapsed since the last service.

More than 2 000 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

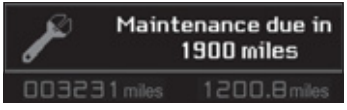
When the ignition is switched on, no service information appears on the instrument panel central screen.

Between 600 miles (1 000 km) and 2 000 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

For 7 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the spanner symbolising the service operations comes on. The instrument panel central screen indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due.

Example: 1 900 miles remain before the next service is due.

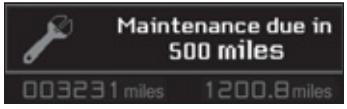
For 7 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the central screen indicates:



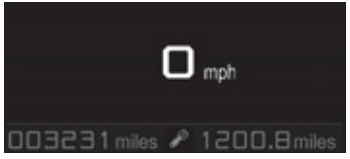
Less than 600 miles (1 000 km) remain before the next service is due

Example: 500 miles remain before the next service is due.

For 7 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the central screen indicates:



The spanner remains on in the screen to indicate that a service must be carried out soon.



Service overdue

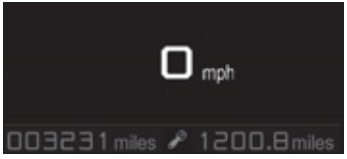
For 7 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner flashes** to indicate that the service must be carried out as soon as possible.

Example: the service is overdue by 180 miles.

For 7 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the central screen indicates:



The spanner remains on in the screen to indicate that a service should have been carried out.



The distance remaining may be weighted by the time factor, depending on the driver's driving habits.

Therefore, the spanner may also come on if you have exceeded the two year service interval.

Service indicator zero reset



After each service, the service indicator must be reset to zero.

The procedure for resetting to zero is as follows:

- switch off the ignition,
- press and hold the trip distance recorder zero reset button,
- switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- when the display indicates **"=0"**, release the button; the spanner disappears.

Following this operation, if you wish to disconnect the battery, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the zero reset to be taken into account.

Engine oil level indicator

System which informs the driver whether the engine oil level is correct or not.

This information is indicated for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, after the service information.

The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level correct



Oil level incorrect



This is indicated by the message "Oil level incorrect".

If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, it is essential that the level is topped up to prevent damage to the engine.

Oil level gauge problem



This is indicated by the message "Oil level measurement invalid". Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Engine oil temperature gauge

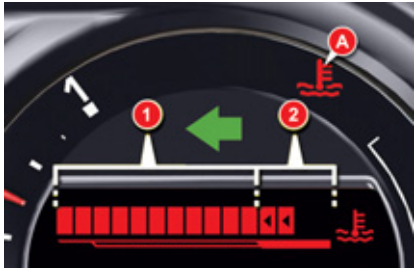


Under normal operating conditions, the bars should be within section **1**.

In severe operating conditions, the bars may extend into section **2**.

In this event, slow down, and if necessary, stop the engine and check the levels (see corresponding section).

Coolant temperature gauge



Under normal operating conditions, the bars should be within section **1**.

In severe operating conditions, the bars may extend into section **2**, the engine coolant temperature warning lamp **A** and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, **stop as soon as it is safe to do so**. Switch off the ignition. **The cooling fan may continue to operate for a certain time**.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

If the **SERVICE** warning lamp comes on, check the levels (see corresponding chapter).

Fuel gauge



On horizontal ground, illumination of the fuel low warning lamp indicates that you are at the reserve level.

An alert message is displayed in the instrument panel.

I

Total distance recorder

System which measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle during its life.

The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

To conform to legislation in the country you are crossing, change the units of distance (miles or km) via the configuration menu.

Trip distance recorder

System which measures a distance travelled during a day or other period since it was reset to zero by the driver.



☞ With the ignition on, press the button until zeros appear.

Lighting dimmer

System for manual adjustment of the brightness of the instruments and controls in relation to the exterior brightness.



Operation

☞ Press button **A** to decrease the brightness of the instruments and controls.

☞ Press button **B** to increase the brightness of the instruments and controls.

Deactivation

When the lighting is off, or in day mode on vehicles fitted with daytime running lamps, pressing the buttons does not have any effect.

MONOCHROME SCREEN C

Displays in the screen

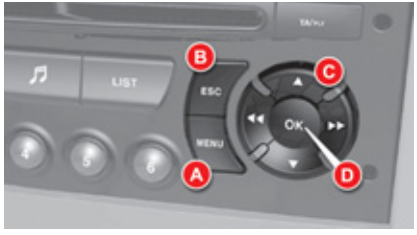


Displays according to context:

- time
- date,
- ambient temperature with air conditioning (the value displayed flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- parking sensor information,
- audio functions
- alert messages,
- settings menus for the screen and vehicle systems.

Controls





A. Access to the "Main Menu"
B. Cancel the operation or return to the previous display
C. Scroll through the screen menus
Confirmation at the steering wheel
D. Confirmation at the audio system control panel

It is recommended that the driver should not operate the controls while the vehicle is in motion.

Main Menu

Press on the button **A** to view the Main Menu of the multifunction screen. This menu gives you access to the following functions:



Personalisation - Configuration

This permits activation / deactivation of the:

- brightness and contrast of the multifunction screen,
- date and time,
- units of the ambient temperature displayed.



Radio-CD

(see "Audio and Telematics" section)



Bluetooth® system

(see "Audio and Telematics" section)

II

II

Adjusting the brightness and contrast

- Press on **A**.
- Use **C** to select the "Brightness - video adjustment" menu. Confirm with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio equipment.
- Select the configuration of the screen using **C**. Confirm with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio equipment.
- Select the brightness setting. Confirm with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio equipment.
- Select the inverse or normal display mode using **C** then validate with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio equipment. To adjust the brightness select "+" or "-" and save your setting with a press on **C**.
- Confirm with **"OK"** in the screen.

Adjusting the date and the time

- Press on **A**.
- Use **C** to select the"Date and time" menu, then confirm your choice with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio system.
- Select the screen configuration using **C**. Confirm with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio system
- Select the date and the time settings, using **B**. Confirm with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio system.
- Press **C** to select the values you wish to modify. Confirm your choice with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio system.
- Confirm with **"OK"** on the screen.

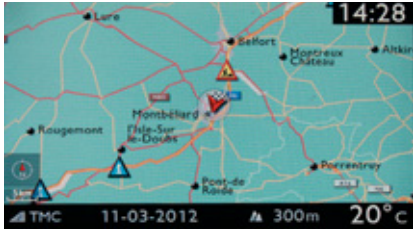
Choosing the units

- Press on **A**.
- Use **C** to select the "Choice of units" menu, then confirm your choice with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio system.
- Using **C**, select the unit then validate with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio system.
- Confirm with **"OK"** in the screen.

Selection of the type of information displayed (Mode)

Successive presses on the end of the wiper stalk or on the **MODE** button on the audio equipment permit selection of the type of information presented in the multifunction screen (date or radio, CD, MP3 CD, CD changer).

COLOUR SCREEN (WITH eMyWay)



Displays in the screen

Depending on the context, it displays:

- time,
- date,
- altitude,
- ambient temperature (the value displayed flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- parking sensor information,
- audio functions,
- telephone information and contacts,
- satellite navigation system information,
- alert messages,
- settings menus for the screen, navigation system and vehicle equipment.

Controls



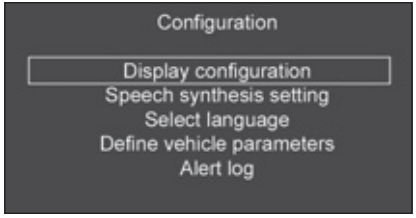
From the eMyWay control panel, to select one of the applications:

- ☞ press the dedicated **"RADIO"**, **"MUSIC"**, **"NAV"**, **"TRAFFIC"**, **"SETUP"** or **"PHONE"** button for access to the corresponding menu,
- ☞ turn dial **A** to select a function, an item in a list,
- ☞ press button **B** to confirm the selection,

  or
- ☞ press the **"ESC"** button to abandon the current operation and return to the previous display.

For more information on these applications, refer to the "Audio Equipment" section.

"SETUP" menu



- ☞ Press the **"SETUP"** button to gain access to the configuration settings menu:
  - "Display configuration",
  - "Speech synthesis setting",
  - "Select language",
  - "Define vehicle parameters",
  - "Alert log".

! For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must be only done when stationary.

II

Display configuration

This menu allows you to choose a colour scheme for the screen, adjust the brightness, set the date and time and choose the units for distance (km or miles), fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l) and temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit).

When setting the time, you can choose to **"Synchronise minutes with GPS"**, so that the minutes are set automatically by satellite reception.

Speech synthesis setting

This menu allows you to set the volume for navigation instructions and to chooses the type of voice (male or female).

Select language

This menu allows you to select the language used by the screen display: (Français, English, Italien, Portugais, Espagnol, Allemand, Néerlandais, Turc, Polonais, Russe).

Define vehicle parameters*

This menu allows you to activate or deactivate certain driving and comfort systems, listed by category:

- **Parking help**
- **Screen wiper functions**
  - Engage rear wiper when in reverse (Rear wiper coupled to reverse; see "Visibility"),
- **Configure lighting (see "Visibility"):**
  - Duration of guide-me-home lighting,
  - Directional headlamps function,
  - Daytime running lamps function**.

Alert log

It lists the active alerts by displaying the various associated messages in turn.

* Depending on country.

** Depending on country of sale.



VENTILATION

A. Sunshine sensor.

B. Soft air diffusion grille.

The soft air diffusion grille located in the centre of the dashboard provides optimum distribution of the air for the front seats.

This system eliminates unpleasant air currents while maintaining an optimum temperature in the passenger compartment.

To open the soft air diffusion grille, turn the wheel upwards.

To close the soft air diffusion grille, turn the wheel fully downwards.

In very hot weather, to obtain more satisfactory central and side ventilation, it is advisable to close the diffused air grille.

C. Cooled glove box.

D. Rear passenger vents.

HEATING, VENTILATION AND AIR CONDITIONING RECOMMENDATIONS

Air conditioning

We recommend use of the automatic regulation of the air conditioning.

It permits automatic and optimised control of all of the following functions: air flow, temperature in the passenger compartment and air distribution, by means of various sensors (ambient temperature, sunshine). This eliminates any need for you to change your settings other than the temperature value displayed.

☞ Take care not to cover the sunshine sensor **A**.

If you select the automatic mode (by pressing the "AUTO" control) and leave all of the vents open, optimum comfort will be maintained and humidity and condensation will be removed regardless of the exterior climatic conditions.

The temperature in the passenger compartment can only be lower than the ambient temperature if the air conditioning is on.

In order to be effective, the air conditioning must be used with the windows closed. If the vehicle has been parked in the sun for a long period and the interior temperature is very high, first ventilate the passenger compartment with the windows open for a few minutes, then close the windows.

To keep the air conditioning system in good working order it is essential that it is operated at least once a month.

The air conditioning uses engine power during its operation. As a result, the fuel consumption of the vehicle increases.

In certain cases of particularly arduous use (e.g. towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures), switching off the air conditioning saves engine power and improves the towing capacity.

Air inlet

Check that the exterior grille for the air inlet, at the bottom of the windscreen, is clean and free of dead leaves, snow, etc.

When washing the vehicle using a high pressure nozzle, avoid spraying at the air inlet.

Air circulation

Maximum comfort is obtained by means of a good distribution of air in the passenger compartment, both in the front and in the rear.

To obtain a uniform distribution of air, take care not to block the exterior air intake grille located at the base of the windscreen, the vents, the air outlets under the front seats and the air extractor located behind the flaps in the boot.

The front and rear vents are fitted with thumbwheels to adjust the air flow and direction. We recommend that you leave all of the vents open.

Dust filter / Odour filter (active carbon)

There is a filter for excluding odours and dust.

This filter must be changed in line with the vehicle's servicing schedule (see the vehicle's servicing booklet).

DIGITAL AIR CONDITIONING (MONO-ZONE)



The air conditioning system operates with the engine running.

Mono-zone: this is the overall regulation of the temperature, distribution and flow of air in the passenger compartment.

The symbols and messages associated with the digital air conditioning controls appear in the multifunction screen.

1. Automatic operation
2. Temperature adjustment
3. Air distribution adjustment
4. Activation/deactivation of the air conditioning
5. Air flow adjustment
6. Front demisting - defrosting
7. Rear demisting - defrosting
8. Air recirculation - intake of exterior air
9. Screen

1. Automatic operation



This is the normal system operating mode. In accordance with the level of comfort chosen, pressing this control, confirmed illumination of indicator lamp **A**, permits automatic and simultaneous control of all of the following functions:

- Air flow.
- Temperature in the passenger compartment.
- Air distribution.
- Air intake.
- Air conditioning.

It is advisable to leave all of the vents open.

Simply pressing one of the controls, with the exception of control **2**, switches the system to manual mode.

Indicator lamp **A** goes off.

2. Temperature adjustment



Turn control **2** to change the temperature:

- Clockwise to increase the temperature.
- Anticlockwise to reduce the temperature.

The setting required is displayed.

The value indicated in the screen corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a temperature in degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit, depending on the screen configuration.

A setting around the **value 21** usually provides optimum comfort. However, depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal.

On entering the vehicle, the interior temperature may be much colder (or warmer) than is comfortable. There is no need to change the temperature displayed to obtain rapidly the level of comfort required.

The automatic regulation of the air conditioning will use its maximum performance settings to correct the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

III

III

Control via the manual controls

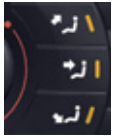
It is possible to adjust one or more functions manually, while leaving the other functions in automatic mode.

☞ Press one of the controls, with the exception of that which regulates the temperature **2**. Indicator lamp **A** goes off.

Switching to manual mode may result in discomfort (temperature, humidity, odour, condensation) and may not provide optimum comfort.

To return to automatic mode, press the **"AUTO"** control.

3. Air distribution adjustment



☞ Press the controls **3** to change the distribution of the air flow.

The indicator lamps corresponding to the distribution chosen come on:

- Windscreen and front side windows.
- Front ventilation (central and side vents and air diffusion grille if open) and rear ventilation.
- Front and rear footwells.

Simultaneous display of the distribution of air to the windscreen and side windows and of front and rear ventilation is not possible.

4. Air conditioning

The air conditioning will only operate when the engine is running. The air blower control (air flow adjustment) must be active to obtain air conditioning.



☞ Press control **4**. Indicator lamp **B** comes on.

In order to be effective, the air conditioning must be used with the windows closed.

Deactivating the air conditioning may result in discomfort (temperature, humidity, odour, condensation).

5. Air flow adjustment



☞ Turn control **5** to the right to increase the air flow or to the left to reduce it.

The air flow level is indicated by the progressive illumination of the bars in the control panel screen **9**.

To prevent condensation and deterioration of the quality of the air in the passenger compartment, ensure that an adequate flow of air is maintained.

Switching off the ventilation



☞ Turn control **5** to the left until the flow of air stops.

The **"OFF"** symbol is displayed in the multifunction screen.

This action switches off the screen and the indicator lamps.

It deactivates all of the system's functions, with the exception of the rear screen demisting.

The temperature-related comfort is no longer controlled (temperature, humidity, odour, condensation).

Avoid driving for too long with the air conditioning off.

To reactivate the air conditioning:

☞ Press control **1**.

6. Front demisting - defrosting



In certain cases, the **"AUTO"** mode may not be sufficient to demist or defrost the windows (humidity, several passengers, ice).

☞ Press control **6** to clear the windows quickly. The indicator lamp comes on.

The "Demisting" mode controls the temperature, air flow and intake and distributes the ventilation to the windscreen and front side windows.

Resuming manual control exits from "Demisting" mode. It must be cancelled to permit renewal of the air in the passenger compartment and demisting.

Once the screen is clear, pressing control **1** returns the system to **"AUTO"** mode.

7. Rear demisting - defrosting

The heated rear screen operates independently of the air conditioning system.



☞ Press control **7**, with the engine running, to demist the rear screen and the door mirrors. The indicator lamp comes on.

Demisting is switched off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current and in relation to the ambient temperature.

It may be stopped by pressing control **7** again or when the engine is switched off.

With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

However, demisting resumes when the engine is switched on again.

Switch off the rear screen and door mirrors demisting when you consider this necessary as low current consumption reduces fuel consumption.

8. Intake of exterior air / Recirculation of interior air

This function enables you to isolate the passenger compartment from exterior fumes and odours.



☞ Press control **8** to set the air intake mode, the indicator lamp comes on.

It must be cancelled as soon as possible to permit renewal of the air in the passenger compartment and demisting.

You can store the air conditioning settings. Refer to the "Storing driving positions" section.

- When starting with the engine cold, the flow will reach its optimum level gradually to prevent an excessive distribution of cold air.
- When entering the vehicle after it has been parked for a fairly long period, if the interior temperature is very different from your comfort setting there is no need to change the temperature displayed in order to quickly reach the level of comfort required. The system automatically uses its maximum performance to correct the difference in temperature as quickly as possible.
- The water resulting from the air conditioning condensation is discharged via an opening provided for this purpose; therefore, a puddle of water may form underneath the vehicle when stationary.
- In all seasons, if the weather is cool, the air conditioning is useful as it removes the humidity from the air and the condensation. Avoid driving for prolonged periods with the air conditioning switched off.

III

DIGITAL AIR CONDITIONING (DUAL-ZONE)



The air conditioning system operates with the engine running.

Dual-zone: this is the independent regulation of the temperature and air distribution on the driver's side and the front passenger's side.

The driver and front passenger can each adjust the temperature and the distribution of the air to suit their requirements.

The symbols and messages associated with the digital air conditioning controls appear in the multifunction screen.

1a. Automatic operation on the driver's side
1b. Automatic operation on the passenger's side
2a. Temperature adjustment on the driver's side
2b. Temperature adjustment on the passenger's side
3a. Air distribution adjustment on the driver's side
3b. Air distribution adjustment on the passenger's side
4a. Driver's zone screen
4b. Passenger's zone screen
5. Air flow adjustment
6. Activation/deactivation of the air conditioning
7. Air recirculation – intake of exterior air
8. Rear demisting – defrosting
9. Front demisting – defrosting

1a-1b. Automatic operation



This is the normal system operating mode. In accordance with the level of comfort chosen, pressing this control, confirmed by illumination of indicator lamp **A**, permits automatic and simultaneous control of all of the following functions:

- Air flow.
- Temperature in the passenger compartment.
- Air distribution.
- Air conditioning.
- Automatic air recirculation.

It is advisable to leave all of the vents open. Simply pressing one of the controls, with the exception of temperature regulation **2a** and **2b**, switches the system to manual mode. Indicator lamp **A** goes off.

2a-2b. Temperature adjustment



☞ Turn control **2a** to change the temperature on the driver's side and control **2b** to change the temperature on the passenger's side: to the right to increase the temperature or to the left to reduce it.

The setting required is displayed.

The value indicated on the display corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a temperature in degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit, depending on the screen configuration.

A setting around the **value 21** usually provides optimum comfort. However, depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal.

On entering the vehicle, the interior temperature may be much colder (or warmer) than is comfortable. There is no need to change the temperature displayed in order to quickly obtain the level of comfort required.

The automatic regulation of the air conditioning will use its maximum performance settings to correct the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

Control via the manual controls

☞ Press one of the controls, with the exception of temperature regulation **2a** and **2b**. The indicator lamps **A** in the **"AUTO"** controls go off.

It is possible to adjust one or more functions manually while leaving the other functions in automatic mode.

Switching to manual mode may result in discomfort (temperature, humidity, odour, condensation) and may not provide optimum comfort.

To return to **"AUTO"** mode, press controls **1a** and **1b**. The indicator lamps **A** come on.

3a-3b. Air distribution adjustment



☞ Press control **3a** to change the distribution of the air flow on the driver's side.

☞ Press control **3b** to change the distribution of the air flow on the passenger's side.

The indicator lamps corresponding to the distribution chosen come on:

- Windscreen and front side windows.
- Front ventilation (central and side vents and air diffusion grille if open) and rear ventilation.
- Front and rear footwells.

Simultaneous display of the distribution of air to the windscreen and side windows and of front and rear ventilation is not possible.

III

5. Air flow adjustment



☞ Press the control:
- to increase the air flow,
- to reduce the air flow.

The air flow level is indicated by the progressive lighting of the fan blade indicator lamps.

Reducing the flow to minimum switches the air conditioning OFF.

To prevent condensation and deterioration of the quality of the air in the passenger compartment, ensure that an adequate flow of air is maintained.

6. Air conditioning

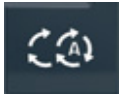


The air conditioning will only operate when the engine is running. The air blower control (air flow adjustment) must be active in order to obtain air conditioning.

☞ Press control **6**. The indicator lamp comes on.

In order to be effective, the air conditioning must be used with the windows closed.

7. Air recirculation - intake of exterior air



Automatic air intake mode

It is activated by default in automatic comfort regulation.



Automatic mode is activated with reverse gear or operation of the screenwash.

This function permits recirculation of the air and isolation the passenger compartment from exterior fumes and odours. It is inactive when the ambient temperature is below +5 °C to avoid the risk of misting inside the vehicle.

Closing the air intake

☞ Press control **7** to close the exterior air intake.



While retaining the other settings, this position allows the driver to isolate the passenger compartment at any time from unpleasant exterior odours and fumes.

It must be cancelled as soon as possible to permit renewal of the air in the passenger compartment and demisting.

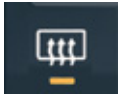
Intake of exterior air

☞ Press control **7** once to open the exterior air intake.



You can store the air conditioning settings. Refer to the "Storing driving positions" section.

8. Rear demisting - defrosting



The heated rear screen operates independently of the air conditioning system.

☞ Press control **8**, with the engine running, to demist the rear screen and the mirrors. The indicator lamp comes on.

Demisting is switched off automatically to avoid excessive consumption of current and depending on the exterior temperature.

It may be stopped by pressing control **8** again or when the engine is switched off.

In this latter case, the demisting resumes if the engine is switched on again within one minute.

Switch off the rear screen and exterior mirrors demisting when you consider this necessary as low current consumption reduces fuel consumption.

9. Front demisting - defrosting



In certain cases, the **"AUTO"** mode may not be sufficient to demist or defrost the windows (humidity, several passengers, ice).

☞ Press control **9** to clear the windows quickly. The indicator lamp comes on.

This system controls the temperature, air flow and intake and distributes the ventilation to the windscreen and front side windows.

Resuming manual control exits from the "Demisting" mode. It must be cancelled as soon as possible to permit renewal of the air in the passenger compartment and demisting.

Pressing one of the controls **1a** and **1b** returns the system to the **"AUTO"** mode.

With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

When starting with the engine cold, air flow will reach its optimum level gradually to prevent an excessive distribution of cold air.

When entering the vehicle after it has been parked for a fairly long period, if the interior temperature is very different from your comfort setting there is no need to change the temperature displayed in order to quickly reach the level of comfort required. The system automatically uses its maximum performance to correct the difference in temperature as quickly as possible.

The water resulting from the air conditioning condensation is discharged via an opening provided for this purpose; therefore, a puddle of water may form underneath the vehicle when stationary.

In all seasons, if the weather is cool, the air conditioning is useful as it removes the humidity from the air and the condensation. Avoid driving for prolonged periods with the air conditioning switched off.

III

PROGRAMMABLE HEATING



The programmable heating operates independently of the engine.

When the engine is off, it pre-heats the coolant circuit in order to benefit from an optimum engine operating temperature from the time the engine is switched on.

The programmable heating system is switched on using the long range remote control. Activation can be immediate or deferred by means of a programming function.

If a malfunction of the programmable heating system occurs, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Programming remote control

The heating system programming remote control consists of the following buttons and displays:

1. Scrolling functions menu buttons.
2. Function indicators: clock, temperature, operating time, programmed time, heater operation, heating management symbols.
3. Digital displays: time, temperature, duration of operation, programmed time or level of heating.
4. Off button.
5. On button.

Displays on the remote control screen



Displaying the functions



Press the buttons **1** in succession to display the functions.

The first press of the left-hand or right-hand button displays the time.

Next, the left-hand button permits access to the programming time then to the level of heating (C1 to C5).

The right-hand button permits access to the passenger compartment temperature then to the duration of operation of the heater if it is to be switched on immediately.

The passenger compartment temperature information is only available when the engine is off.

Setting the time



Once the time has been displayed, by means of the buttons **1**, press buttons **4** and **5** simultaneously within 10 seconds.

This symbol flashes.

Set the time using the buttons **1**.

Press buttons **4** and **5** simultaneously to save it.

This symbol is displayed (fixed).

Immediate activation



Press button **5** (ON) until the message **"OK"** appears.

When the signal has been received, the message **"OK"** is displayed along with the duration of operation.

The heater starts and this symbol is displayed.

To deactivate the function, press button **4** (OFF) until the message **"OK"** appears.

This symbol is switched off.

When carrying out these operations, if the message **"FAIL"** appears, the signal has not been received. Repeat the procedure after changing your location.

Setting the duration of operation



Press the buttons **1** to display the duration of operation.

This symbol is displayed.

Once the duration of operation has been displayed, press buttons **4** and **5** simultaneously within 10 seconds.

This symbol flashes.

Set the duration by pressing the buttons **1** (adjustment in steps of 10 mins and max value 30 mins).

Press buttons **4** and **5** simultaneously to save the duration of operation.

This symbol is displayed (fixed).

The factory setting value is 30 minutes.

III

III

Programming the heating

You must programme your departure time in order for the system to calculate the optimum heater start time automatically.



Programming the departure time

Press the buttons **1** to display the programming time.

This symbol is displayed.

Once the programming time has been displayed, press buttons **4** and **5** simultaneously within 10 seconds.

This symbol flashes.

Set the time by pressing the buttons **1** and press buttons **4** and **5** simultaneously to save it.

This symbol is displayed (fixed).

Activation - deactivation

Once the programming time has been displayed by means of the buttons **1**, press button **5** (ON) until the message **"OK"** appears.

When the signal has been received, the message **"OK"** is displayed along with the symbol **"HTM"**.

This symbol is displayed when the heater starts.

HTM: Heat Thermo Management.

To deactivate the programming, press button **4** (OFF) until the message **"OK"** appears.

The symbol **"HTM"** is switched off.

When carrying out these operations, if the message **"FAIL"** appears, the signal has not been received. Repeat the procedure after changing your location.

Switching off the heating

Press button **5** (ON).

The symbol **"HTM"** remains on.

Changing the level of heating

The system offers **5 levels** of heating (from the lowest level **C1** to the highest level **C5**).

Once the level of heating has been displayed by means of the buttons **1**, press buttons **4** and **5** simultaneously.

The letter **"C"** flashes.

Set the level of heating by pressing the buttons **1**.

Press buttons **4** and **5** simultaneously to save the level selected. The letter **"C"** is displayed (fixed).

The factory pre-sets are replaced by the new settings entered. The programmed times are stored until the next time they are changed.

When the departure time is activated, the level of heating cannot be changed. The departure time must be deactivated first.

Changing the battery

The remote control is supplied by a 6V-28L battery, which is supplied.

Information on the display indicates when it is time to replace this battery.

Unclip the casing then replace the battery.

The remote control must then be re-initialised, see below.

Do not discard the used batteries, take them to an approved collection point.

Reinitialising the remote control

If the vehicle's battery is disconnected or the remote control's battery is replaced, the remote control must be reinitialised.

After switching on the power, press button **4** (OFF) for 1 second within the next 5 seconds. If the operation has taken place correctly the message **"OK"** is displayed on the remote control screen.

If a problem occurs, the message **"FAIL"** appears. Repeat the operation.

An adaptation of your programmable heating allows you to pre-heat your vehicle's passenger compartment. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



The interior volumetric protection alarm movement sensor may be disturbed by the flow of air from the programmable heating when it is in operation.

To avoid any unexpected triggering of the alarm during use of the programmable heating, it is advisable to deactivate the interior volumetric protection.



Always switch off the programmable heating while filling with fuel to avoid any risk of fire or explosion.

To avoid any risk of poisoning and asphyxiation, the programmable heating must not be used, even for short periods, in an enclosed space such as a garage or workshop which is not equipped with an exhaust gas extraction system.

Do not park the vehicle on an inflammable surface (dry grass, dead leaves, paper…), there is a risk of fire.

The programmable heating system is supplied by the vehicle's fuel tank. Before use, ensure that the quantity of fuel remaining is sufficient. If the fuel tank is at the reserve, we strongly advise that you do not programme the heating.

III

III

FRONT SEATS

Seat consisting of a seat cushion, seat back and head restraint which can all be adjusted for optimum driving comfort.



For your safety, do not drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and correctly adjusted.

MANUAL ADJUSTMENTS

1. **Adjustments to the height and angle of the head restraint**

   To raise it, pull upwards.

   To lower it, press on the control **A** to unlock it, and simultaneously on the head restraint itself. The adjustment is correct when the top edge of the head restraint is at the same height as the top of the head. It is also tilt adjustable.

   To raise it, press control **A** to unlock it, then pull it upwards. It may be necessary to adjust the backrest angle.

2. **Adjustment of the backrest angle**

   Operate the control and adjust the position of the backrest to the front or to the rear.

3. **Adjustment of the seat height**

   Raise or lower the control the number of times required to obtain the desired position.

4. **Longitudinal adjustment of seat**

   Lift the control bar and adjust to the desired position.

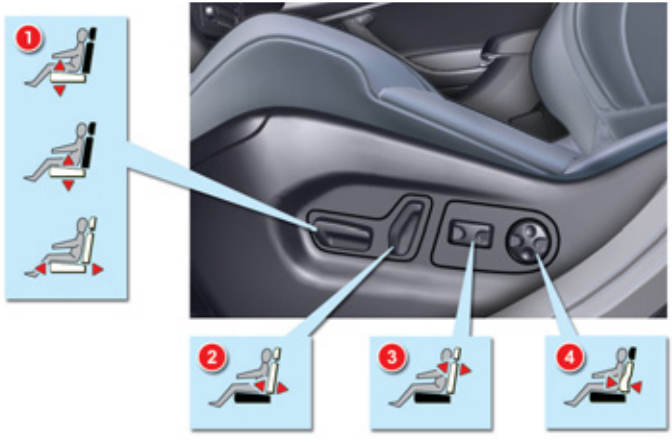
5. **Adjustment of lumbar support**

   Turn the control and adjust to the desired position.

6. **Heated seat controls**

   The heated seats only operate when the engine is running.

FRONT SEATS



ELECTRIC ADJUSTMENTS

To adjust the electric seats, switch on the ignition or start the engine if the vehicle has gone into economy mode.

Seat adjustments are also possible for a short period after opening one of the front doors or switching off the ignition.

1. **Adjustment of the seat height and angle, and longitudinal adjustment**
   - ☞ Raise or lower the front of the control to adjust the seat cushion angle.
   - ☞ Raise or lower the rear of the control to raise or lower the seat.
   - ☞ Simultaneously raise or lower the front and rear of the control in order to raise or lower the entire seat.
2. **Adjustment of the backrest angle**

   Move the control forwards or backwards to adjust the backrest angle.
3. **Adjustment of the angle of the top of the backrest**

   Move the control forwards or backwards to adjust the angle of the top of the backrest.
4. **Adjustment of lumbar support**

   This function allows you to independently adjust the height and level of lumbar support.

Move the control:

- ☞ Forwards or backwards to increase or reduce the lumbar support.
- ☞ Upwards or downwards to raise or lower the lumbar support zone.

Head restraint height and angle adjustments on electric seats



- ☞ To adjust the angle of the head restraint, push back or pull forward section **C** of the head restraint until you reach the desired position.
- ☞ To raise it, pull upwards.
- ☞ To lower it, press on the control **D** to unlock it, and simultaneously on the head restraint itself.
- ☞ To remove it, press on the control **D** to unlock it, then pull it upwards.

III

Heated seats control

With the engine running, the front seats can operate separately.

☞ Use the corresponding adjustment dial, placed on the outer side of each front seat, to switch on and select the level of heating required:



0: Off.
1: Low.
2: Medium.
3: High.

Massage function



This function provides the driver with a back massage. It only operates when the engine is running.

☞ Press on button **A**.

The warning lamp comes on and the massage function is activated for a period of 1 hour. During this time, massage is performed in cycles of 6 minutes (4 minutes of massage followed by 2 minutes break). In total, the system will perform 10 cycles.

After 1 hour, the function is deactivated. The warning lamp goes out.

Deactivation

You can deactivate the massage function at any time by pressing on button **A**.

Welcome function

The welcome function assists entry and leaving the vehicle.

After switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door, the seat moves back automatically and then stays in this position, ready for the next entry to the vehicle.

When switching on the ignition, the seat moves forward to the memorised driving position.

When moving the seat, take care that no person or object hinders the automatic movement of the seat.

This function is deactivated by default. You may activate or deactivate this function using the "Main Menu" on the instrument panel screen. To do so, select "Vehicle parameters/ Comfort/Driver welcome".

Storing driving positions



System which stores the settings of the driver's seat. Up to two positions can be stored using the buttons on the side of the driver's seat.

When storing a driving position, the air conditioning settings are also memorised.

To adjust the air conditioning, refer to the "Air conditioning" section.

Storing a position

Using buttons M / 1 / 2

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Adjust your seat.
- ☞ Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within four seconds.

  An audible signal confirms that the settings have been stored.

Storing a new position cancels the previous position.

For your safety, avoid storing a driving position while driving.

Recalling a stored position

Ignition on or engine running

- ☞ Briefly press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.

An audible signal indicates the end of the adjustment.

When the ignition is on, after a few consecutive position recalls, the function will be deactivated until the engine is started, to prevent discharging of the battery.

REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS



The rear head restraints can be removed and have two positions:

- high, position for use,
- low, storage position.

To raise a head restraint, pull it upwards.

To lower it, press the lug then the head restraint.

To remove it, place it in the high position, push the lug and pull it upwards.

To refit it, engage the head restraint rods in the holes taking care to remain in line with the seat back.

Never drive with the head restraints removed, they must be in place and correctly adjusted.

III

REAR SEATS



Bench seat, the left-hand (2/3) or right-hand (1/3) section of which can be folded to adapt the boot load space.

Removing the seat cushion

- ☞ Move the corresponding front seat forwards if necessary.
- ☞ Raise the front of the seat cushion **1**.
- ☞ Tilt the seat cushion **1** fully against the front seat.
- ☞ Remove the seat cushion **1** from its fixings by pulling upwards.

Refitting the seat cushion

- ☞ Position the seat cushion **1** vertically in its fixings.
- ☞ Fold down the seat cushion **1**.
- ☞ Press on the seat cushion to secure it.

Folding the seat

In order to fold a rear seat without any risk of damage, **always start with the seat cushion, never with the seat back:**

- ☞ move the corresponding front seat forwards if necessary,
- ☞ raise the front of the seat cushion **1**,
- ☞ tilt the seat cushion **1** fully against the front seat,
- ☞ check that the seat belt is positioned correctly on the side of the seat back,
- ☞ lower or remove the head restraints if necessary,
- ☞ pull the control **3** forwards to release the seat back **2**,
- ☞ tilt the seat back **2**.

The seat cushion **1** can be removed to increase the loading volume.

Returning the seat back to its original position

When returning the rear seat to its original position:

- ☞ put the seat back **2** in the upright position and secure it,
- ☞ fold the seat cushion **1**,
- ☞ refit the head restraints or put them back in place.

When returning the rear seat to its original position, take care not to trap the seat belts and ensure that their buckles are positioned correctly.



The red indicator on the control **3** should no longer be visible; if it is, push the seat fully back.

MIRRORS



Door mirrors

Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glasses providing the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking. They can also be folded.

Adjustment

With the ignition on:

- move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror,
- move control **B** in all four directions to adjust,
- return control **A** to the central position.

The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear.

Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Demisting/defrosting of the door mirrors is associated with that of the rear screen.

Folding

- from outside; lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- from inside; with the ignition on, pull control **A** rearwards.

If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Control **A** must be pulled again.

Unfolding

- from outside; unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- from inside; with the ignition on, pull control **A** rearwards.

If the position is changed manually, a long press on control **A** re-engages the mirror.

The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

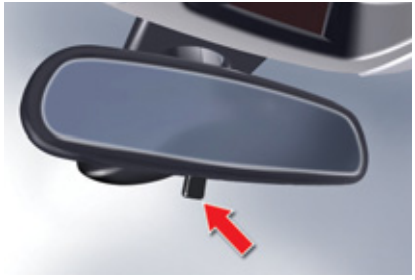
Rear view mirror

Adjustable mirror providing a central rearward view.

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps from other vehicles...

As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the "blind spot".

Manual day/night model



Adjustment

- Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

Day / night position

- Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.
- Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

III

Automatic day/night model



By means of a sensor, which measures the light from the rear of the vehicle, this system automatically and progressively changes between the day and night uses.

It has an anti-dazzle system which darkens the mirror glass: this reduces any driver discomfort caused by the light beam of following vehicles, the sun...

In order to guarantee optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.



In vehicles fitted with electrochromatic door mirrors, the system has an on/off button and an associated warning lamp.

On

☞ With the ignition on, press on button **1**.

The warning lamp **2** comes on and the mirror glass is in automatic mode.

Off

☞ Press on button **1**.

The warning lamp **2** goes off and the mirror glass remains in its lightest definition.

STEERING WHEEL ADJUSTMENT

The steering wheel can be adjusted for height and reach to adapt the driving position to the size of the driver.



Adjustment

☞ First, adjust the driver's seat to the most suitable position.

☞ **When stationary**, pull the lever **A** to unlock the steering wheel adjustment.

☞ Adjust for height and reach.

☞ Push the lever to lock the steering wheel adjustment.

After locking, if you press firmly on the steering wheel, a slight click may be heard.

As a safety precaution, these operations must only be carried out while the vehicle is stationary.

REMOTE CONTROL KEY

System which permits central unlocking or locking of the vehicle using the lock or from a distance. It is also used to locate and start the vehicle and provide guide-me-home lighting, as well as providing protection against theft.

Unlocking the vehicle



Unfolding the key

☞ First press button **A** to unfold the key.

Complete unlocking using the remote control



☞ Press the open padlock to unlock the vehicle.

Complete unlocking using the key

☞ Turn the key to the left in the driver's door lock to unlock the vehicle.

Unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds and lighting of the courtesy lamp (if the function is activated).

According to version, the door mirrors unfold at the same time.

Selective unlocking using the remote control



☞ Press the open padlock once to unlock the driver's door only.

☞ Press the open padlock again to unlock the other doors and the boot.

Each unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds and by switching on of the courtesy lamp.

According to version, the exterior mirrors unfold at the same time as the first unlocking action.

IV

The complete or selective unlocking parameter is set via the instrument panel screen configuration menu (see "Instruments and controls" section).

Complete unlocking is activated by default.

Selective unlocking is not possible using the key.

Electric boot opening



☞ Press button **B** to open the boot.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking using the remote control



☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle completely.

☞ Press the closed padlock for more than two seconds to close the windows and sunroof automatically in addition to locking.

Normal locking using the key

☞ Turn the key to the right in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle completely.

Locking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds and by the courtesy lamp going off.

According to version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

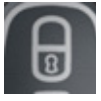
If one of the doors, the rear screen or the boot is still open, the central locking does not take place.

When the vehicle is locked, if it is unlocked inadvertently, it will lock again automatically after thirty seconds unless a door is opened.

When stationary with the engine off, locking is confirmed by flashing of the interior locking control indicator lamp.

The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Deadlocking using the remote control



☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle completely or press the closed padlock for more than two seconds to close the windows and sunroof automatically in addition to locking.

☞ Press the closed padlock again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Deadlocking using the key

☞ Turn the key to the right in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle completely and hold it in this position for more than two seconds to close the windows automatically in addition to locking.

☞ Turn the key to the right again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Deadlocking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

According to version, the exterior mirrors fold at the same time.

Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative.

It also deactivates the manual central control button.

When stationary with the engine off, locking is confirmed by flashing of the indicator lamp on the interior locking control.

If one of the doors or the boot is open or has not been closed correctly, the central locking will not work.

Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

Folding the key



☞ First press button **A** to fold the key.

Locating your vehicle

☞ Press the closed padlock to locate your locked vehicle in a car park.

This is indicated by switching on of the interior lighting and flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

The vehicle remains locked.

Guide-me-home lighting



A press on button **B** operates the guide-me-home lighting (lighting of the side-lamps, dipped beams and number plate lamps).

A second press before the end of the timing cancels the guide-me-home lighting.

The timed duration can be set via the "Lighting" menu on the "Main Menu" of the instrument panel screen.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic engine immobiliser

The key contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few minutes after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.

SERVICE

In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the screen.

In this case, your vehicle will not start; contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

Keep safely the label attached to the keys given to you on acquisition of the vehicle.

IGNITION SWITCH



1. "S": Steering lock

To unlock the steering, gently move the steering wheel while turning the key, without forcing it.

2. "M": Drive position

Depending on the version of your vehicle, the orange and red warning lamps should also come on for a short time.

3. "D": Starter

Release the key as soon the engine has started.

If the first attempt fails, switch off the ignition. Wait ten seconds then operate the starter again.

Steering lock

1. "S": After removing the key, turn the steering wheel to lock the steering. The key can only be removed in position **S**.

2. "M": Ignition switched on, the steering is unlocked (by turning the key to position **M**, move the steering wheel gently if necessary).

3. "D": Starter position.

Never turn the key to this position when the engine is running.

Do not run the engine in an enclosed space or where there is insufficient ventilation.

It is essential always to drive with the engine running in order to retain braking and steering assistance.

Never remove the ignition key before the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

Avoid attaching a heavy object to the key which would weigh down on its shaft in the switch and could cause a malfunction.

STOPPING

Vehicles equipped with a turbocharger

Never stop the engine without having allowed it to run for a few seconds at idle, this being the time required for the turbocharger to return to a normal speed.

Do not flick the accelerator at the moment of switching off the ignition. This could cause serious damage to the turbocharger(s).

Operating problem

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control fault, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

- ☞ First of all, use the key in the lock to unlock or lock your vehicle.
- ☞ Then, reinitialise the remote control.

If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Reinitialisation

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Turn the key to position **2 (Drive)**.
- ☞ Press the closed padlock immediately for a few seconds, until the operation requested is triggered.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.

The remote control is fully operational again.

Changing the battery



Battery ref.: CR0523 / 3 volts.

This replacement battery is available from CITROËN dealers or a qualified workshop.

SERVICE If the battery is flat, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen.

- ☞ Unclip the casing using a coin at the notch.
- ☞ Slide the flat battery out of its location.
- ☞ Slide the new battery into its location observing the original direction.
- ☞ Clip the casing.
- ☞ Reinitialise the remote control.

Lost keys

Visit a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's registration document, your personal identification documents and if possible the key code label.

The CITROËN dealer will be able to look up the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.

Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You run the risk of stopping it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised.

The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition switch, even when the ignition is switched off, except for reinitialisation.

Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

However, the vehicle unlocks automatically in the event of a serious impact causing airbag deployment.

As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition switch when you leave the vehicle, even for a short time.

Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the pairing of all of the keys in your possession checked by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that only your keys can be used to open and start the vehicle.



Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment.

Take them to an approved collection point.

ALARM*

System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins. It provides the following types of monitoring.

- **exterior perimeter**

The system checks for opening of the vehicle.

The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot, the bonnet...

- **interior volumetric**

The system checks for any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment.

The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

- **tilt**

The system checks for any change in the attitude of the vehicle.

The alarm is triggered if the vehicle is lifted, moved or knocked.

Self-protection function

The system checks for the putting out of service of its components.

The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the siren wiring are put out of service or damaged.

For all work on the alarm system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system



Activation

☞ Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.

☞ Press the locking button on the remote control.

The monitoring system is active: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.

After the locking button on the remote control is pressed, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after a delay of 5 seconds and the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring after a delay of 45 seconds.

If an opening (door, boot...) is not closed fully, the vehicle is not locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after a delay of 45 seconds at the same time as the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring.

* According to country.

Deactivation

☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control.

The alarm system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- leaving a pet in the vehicle,
- leaving a window partially open,
- washing your vehicle,
- changing a wheel,
- having your vehicle towed,
- transport by sea.

Deactivation of the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

☞ Switch off the ignition.

☞ Within ten seconds, press the button until the indicator lamp is on continuously.

☞ Get out of the vehicle.

☞ Press the locking button on the remote control immediately.

The exterior perimeter monitoring alone is activated: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.

To be effective, this deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.



Reactivation of the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

- ☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control to deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring.
- ☞ Press the locking button on the remote control to activate all the monitoring functions.

The indicator lamp in the button again flashes once per second.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for thirty seconds.

The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times in succession.

When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ☞ unlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock,
- ☞ open the door; the alarm is triggered,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the alarm stops; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.

Operating fault

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the indicator lamp in the button indicates a fault with the system.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Automatic activation*

2 minutes after closing the last door or the boot, the system is activated automatically.

- ☞ To avoid triggering the alarm when entering the vehicle, first press the remote control unlocking button.

* Depending on country of sale.

ELECTRIC WINDOWS



1. **Driver's electric window control.**
2. **Passenger's electric window control.**
3. **Rear right electric window control.**
4. **Rear left electric window control.**
5. **Deactivation of the rear electric window and door controls.**

One-touch electric windows

There are two options:

- **manual mode**
  - ☞ Press or pull the control gently. The window stops when the control is released.

- **automatic mode**
  - ☞ Press or pull the control firmly. The window opens or closes fully when the control is released.
  - ☞ Pressing the control again stops the movement of the window.

The electric window controls remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off or until the vehicle is locked after a door is opened.

If one of the passenger windows cannot be operated from the driver's door control panel, carry out the operation from the control panel of the passenger door concerned, and vice versa.

Safety anti-pinch

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and partially lowers again.

If the window cannot be closed (for example, in the presence of ice), immediately after the movement is reversed:

- ☞ press and hold the control until the window opens fully,
- ☞ then pull the control immediately and hold it until the window closes,
- ☞ continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

Reinitialisation

If a window does not rise automatically, its operation must be reinitialised:

- ☞ pull the control until the window stops,
- ☞ release the control and pull it again until the window closes fully,
- ☞ continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed,
- ☞ press the control to lower the window automatically to the low position,
- ☞ when the window has reached the low position, press the control again for approximately one second.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

Deactivation of the rear electric window and door controls



- ☞ For the safety of your children, press control **5** to deactivate the rear electric window controls regardless of their position.

Indicator lamp on, the rear controls are deactivated.

Indicator lamp off, the rear controls are activated.

A message in the instrument panel screen informs you of the activation / deactivation of the control.

This control also deactivates the interior controls for the rear doors (refer to the section "Child safety - § Electric child lock").

Any other status of the indicator lamp indicates a fault with the electric child lock.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

If an obstacle is encountered during operation of the electric windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the control concerned.

When the driver operates the controls for the passengers' electric windows, they must ensure that no one is preventing correct closing of the windows.

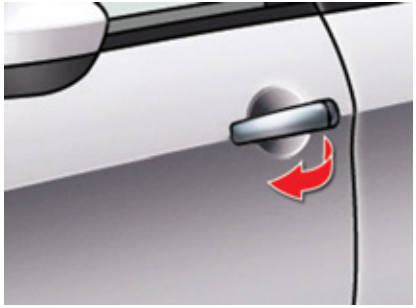
The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.

Be aware of children when operating the windows.

DOORS

Opening

From outside



☞ After unlocking the vehicle completely using the remote control or the key, pull the door handle.

When the selective unlocking is activated, the first press of the remote control unlocking button permits unlocking of the driver's door only.

From inside



☞ Pull the interior control lever of a front door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

With the selective unlocking activated:

- the driver's door control unlocks the driver's door only,
- the other door controls unlock the other doors and the boot.

The interior door controls do not operate when the vehicle is deadlocked.

Manual centralised control

System which provides full manual locking or unlocking of the doors and boot from the inside.



Locking

☞ Press button **A** to lock the vehicle.

The red indicator lamp on the button comes on. It flashes when the doors are locked while stationary with the engine off.

If one of the doors is open, the central locking from the inside does not take place.

IV

Unlocking

☞ Press button **A** again to unlock the vehicle.

The red indicator lamp on the button switches off.

If the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the red indicator lamp flashes and button **A** is inactive.

☞ In this case, use the remote control or the key to unlock the vehicle.

Automatic central locking

System which provides full automatic locking or unlocking of the doors and the boot while driving.

You can activate or deactivate this function.



Locking

When the speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the doors and the boot lock automatically.

If one of the doors is open, the automatic central locking does not take place.

If the boot is open, the automatic central locking of the doors is active.

Unlocking

☞ Above 6 mph (10 km/h), press button **A** to unlock the doors and the boot temporarily.

Activation

☞ Press button **A** for more than two seconds.

A confirmation message appears on the instrument panel screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Deactivation

☞ Press button **A** again for more than two seconds.

A confirmation message appears on the instrument panel screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Emergency control

System allowing the doors to be locked and unlocked manually in the event of a malfunction of the central locking system or battery failure.

Locking the driver's door

☞ Insert the key in the door lock, then turn it to the rear.

You can also apply the procedure described for the passenger doors.

Unlocking the driver's door

☞ Insert the key in the door lock, then turn it to the front.

Locking the front and rear passenger doors



- Open the doors.
- On the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on (see Child Safety).
- Remove the black cap, located on the edge of the door, using the key.
- Insert the key in the socket without forcing it, then without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.
- Remove the key and refit the cap.
- Close the doors and check that the vehicle has locked correctly from the outside.

Unlocking the front and rear passenger doors

- Pull the interior door opening control.

BOOT (SALOON)

Opening



- Press upwards on lever **1** and lift up the boot lid.

Locking/unlocking

With the vehicle stationary, this is carried out using:

- The remote control.
- The key in a door lock.
- The interior central locking/ unlocking control.

The boot automatically locks when the vehicle is moving at a speed of over 6 mph (10 km/h), even if automatic central locking is deactivated. It is unlocked when a door is opened or when the central locking button is pressed (speed lower than 6 mph (10 km/h)).

Emergency boot release

System for mechanical unlocking of the boot in the event of a battery or central locking malfunction.



Unlocking

- Fold back the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.
- Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the tailgate.
- Push the white part, located inside the lock, to the left to unlock the boot.

BOOT (TOURER)

Manual opening



☞ Press upwards on lever **A** and lift up the tailgate.

Electric opening



☞ Press upwards on lever **A**, or press button **B** of the remote control.

Do not attempt to help the opening of the tailgate manually after pressing the control **A**.

Manual closing

☞ Lower the tailgate using the interior handle **C**.

Electric closing

☞ Press the push-button **D** to close the tailgate.

Do not interrupt the closing of the tailgate; if any obstacle prevents it closing, the operation will stop and the tailgate will automatically rise by a few centimetres.

Locking/unlocking

With the vehicle stationary, this is carried out using:

- The remote control.
- The key in a door lock.
- The interior central locking/ unlocking control.

The boot automatically locks when the vehicle is moving at a speed of over 6 mph (10 km/h), even if automatic central locking is deactivated. It is unlocked when a door is opened or when the central locking button is pressed (at a speed of less than 6 mph (10 km/h)).

Interrupting the opening / closing of the tailgate

When the tailgate is being opened or closed electrically, you can interrupt its movement at any point by pressing push-button **D**, the control **A** or button **B**.

You can then open or close the tailgate electrically or manually, if necessary moving it in the opposite direction to release it.

Memorisation of an intermediate position

You can store an opening angle for the tailgate:

☞ Manually or automatically move the tailgate to the required position.

☞ Make a long press on push-button **D**. The system emits a short audible beep.

☞ Release the push-button **D**.

Cancelling the memorisation

With the tailgate in the intermediate position, you can cancel the stored position:

- ☞ Make a long press on push-button **D**. The system emits a long audible beep.
- ☞ Release the push-button **D**. The tailgate will return to the fully open position at the next use.

Electrical protection of the motor

If the tailgate is repeatedly opened and closed in quick succession, the motor can start to overheat and then cut out, preventing opening and closing of the tailgate.

Allow the motor to cool down for ten minutes without opening or closing the tailgate.

Closing in manual back-up mode remains possible.

To avoid risk of injury, make sure that no one is in the vicinity of the boot while opening and closing.

If the tailgate is carrying extra weight (snow, bicycle carrier, etc.) there is a risk of it closing under this load. Support the tailgate or first unload the bicycle carrier or clear the snow.

When using an automatic car wash, don't forget to lock the vehicle so as to avoid any risk of motorised opening of the tailgate.

PANORAMIC SUNROOF (SALOON)

Operation



Sunroof closed

- Press **B** to first notch: tilting.
- Press **B** to second notch: automatic complete tilting.
- Press **A** to first notch: sliding towards rear.
- Press **A** to second notch: automatic total sliding towards rear.

Sunroof open

- Press **B** to first notch: closure.
- Press **B** to second notch: automatic total closure.

Tilted sunroof

- Press **A** to first notch: closure.
- Press **A** to second notch: automatic total closure.



Your sun roof is fitted with a manually-operated blind.

Anti-pinch

An anti-pinch device stops the sun roof from closing, whether sliding or tilting. If it meets an obstacle, it re-opens.

Reinitialisation

After a battery disconnection or if there has been a malfunction, you have to re-initialise the anti-pinch function.

☞ move control **B** until the roof is in the complete tilting position,

☞ keep control **B** pressed down for a minimum of 1 second.

During these operations, the anti-pinch function does not operate.

Always remove the ignition key when leaving the vehicle, even if for a short time.

In the event of anything being caught by the sunroof closing, you must reverse the roof movement.

Do this by reversing the position of the control switch.

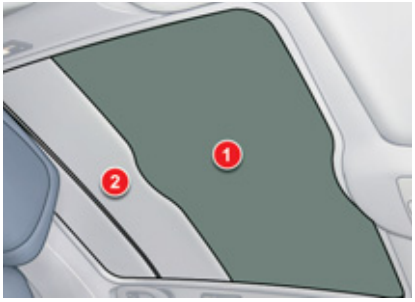
When the driver is operating the sunroof, they must always make sure that the passengers are not preventing it from closing properly.

The driver must ensure that passengers use the sunroof control correctly.

Pay special attention to where children are when operating the sun oof.

The fitting of a sunroof as an accessory is prohibited

PANORAMIC SUNROOF (TOURER)



This comprises a tinted glass panoramic area **1** to improve brightness and vision in the passenger compartment.

It is fitted with an electric blind **2** to help maintain a comfortable temperature and reduce noise.

SEQUENTIAL ELECTRIC BLIND



Opening

☞ Press control **A**.

Pressing to the **1st notch** allows you to open the blind step by step.

Pressing to the **2nd notch** allows you to fully open the blind.

The blind stops in the closest predefined position (11 positions) as soon as you release the control.

Closing

☞ Press control **B**.

Press to the **first notch** to close the blind step by step.

Press to the **second notch** to close the blind completely.

The blind stops at the nearest preset position (11 positions) as soon as you release the control.

Anti-pinch

If the blind meets an obstacle whilst closing, it stops and opens partially again.

You must re-initialise the anti-pinch function within 5 seconds of the blind stopping:

☞ press control **B** until the blind is fully closed (closing in steps of a few centimetres).

After a battery disconnection, or if there has been a malfunction, you have to re-initialise the anti-pinch function:

☞ press control **B** to the 2nd notch (fully closed),

☞ wait until the blind is fully closed,

☞ press control **B** for at least 3 seconds.

If the blind opens randomly during a closing operation, and straight after the blind stops:

☞ Press control **B** until the blind closes fully.

During these operations, the anti-pinch function does not operate.

In the event of anything being caught when the blind is moving, you must reverse the movement of the blind. To do so, reverse the position of the control.

When the driver is operating the blind, he or she must always make sure that the passengers are not preventing it from closing properly.

The driver must ensure that passengers use the blind correctly.

Pay particular attention to children when operating the blind.

FUEL TANK

Capacity of the tank: approximately 71 litres*.

Low fuel level

When the minimum level in the tank is reached, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible warning and a message on the multifunction screen. When it first comes on, there remains around 5 litres of fuel in the tank.

You must refuel to avoid running out of fuel.

Opening the fuel flap



☞ Press at the top left corner, then pull open from the left.

Refuelling



☞ turn the key a quarter turn to lock and unlock the filler cap,

☞ when refuelling, place the cap on hook **A**,

☞ fill the tank, but **do not persist after the third cut-off**; this could cause your vehicle to malfunction.

While you are refuelling, the engine must be stopped and the ignition switched off.

For a petrol engine with a catalytic converter, unleaded fuel is compulsory.

* 55 litres for Slovakia.

Additions of fuel must be of at least 5 litres to be taken into account by the fuel gauge.

The filler neck is narrower to ensure that only unleaded petrol nozzles can be put in.

Opening the filler cap may create a noise of an inrush of air. This vacuum, which is entirely normal, is caused by the sealing of the fuel system.

! With Stop & Start, never refuel with the system in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key.

MISFUEL PREVENTION (DIESEL)*

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It avoids the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.

Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.



Operation

When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of your Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.

Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

It remains possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank.

In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device and pour slowly.

Quality of the fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are perfectly compatible with E10 type petrol biofuels (containing 10% ethanol), conforming to European standards EN 228 and EN 15376.

E85 type fuels (containing up to 85% ethanol) are reserved exclusively for vehicles marketed for the use of this type of fuel (BioFlex vehicles). The quality of the ethanol must comply with European standard EN 15293.

For Brazil only, special vehicles are marketed to run on fuels containing up to 100% ethanol (E100 type).

* According to country of sale.

Quality of the fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are perfectly compatible with biofuels which conform to current and future European standards (Diesel fuel which complies with standard EN 590 mixed with a biofuel which complies with standard EN 14214) available at the pumps (containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

The B30 biofuel can be used in certain Diesel engines; however, this use is subject to strict application of the special servicing conditions. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The use of any other type of (bio)fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

Travelling abroad

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.

Before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the CITROËN dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you want to travel.

EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROLS

Control stalk for the selection and control of the various front and rear lamps providing the vehicle's lighting.

Main lighting

The various front and rear lamps of the vehicle are designed to adapt the driver's visibility progressively in relation to the climatic conditions:

- sidelamps, to be seen,
- dipped beam headlamps to see without dazzling other drivers,
- main beam headlamps to see clearly when the road is clear.

Additional lighting

Other lamps are fitted to fulfil the requirements of particular driving conditions:

- a rear foglamp to be seen from a distance,
- front foglamps for even better forward vision,
- directional headlamps for improved visibility when cornering,
- daytime running lamps to be seen during the day.

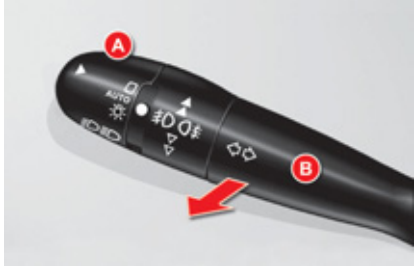
Settings

Various automatic lighting control modes are also available depending on options:

- daytime running lamps,
- automatic illumination of headlamps,
- directional lighting,
- guide-me-home lighting.

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Manual controls



The lighting is controlled directly by the driver by means of the ring **A** and the stalk **B**.

A. Main lighting mode selection ring: turn it to position the symbol required facing the mark.


Lamps off.



Automatic illumination of headlamps.


Sidelamps.


Dipped headlamps or main beam headlamps.

B. Stalk for switching headlamps: pull the stalk towards you to switch the lighting between dipped and main beam headlamps.

In the lamps off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

Displays

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms that the lighting selected is on.

C. Foglamps selection ring.

The foglamps operate with the side-lamps and the dipped and main beam headlamps.

Model with rear foglamps only



- 1st turn forwards: rear foglamps on.
- 1st turn rearwards: rear foglamps off.

Model with front and rear foglamps



- 1st turn forwards: front foglamps on.
- 2nd turn forwards: rear foglamps on.
- 1st turn rearwards: rear foglamps off.
- 2nd turn rearwards: front foglamps off.

In good or rainy weather, both day and night, use of the front foglamps and the rear foglamps is prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or falling snow.

In these weather conditions, it is your responsibility to switch on the foglamps and dipped headlamps manually as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light.

Do not forget to switch off the front and rear foglamps when they are no longer needed.

Lighting left on

When a front door is opened with the ignition off and in manual lighting mode, an audible signal warns the driver if the vehicle's lighting is still on.

In this case, switching off the lighting stops the audible signal.

With the ignition off, if the dipped headlamps remain on, they will switch off automatically after thirty minutes to prevent discharging of the battery.

Daytime-running lamps

System which switches on special lamps at the front, to make the vehicle more visible by day.

They light up automatically and permanently, when the engine is running, if:

- The function is activated* in the "Main Menu" of the instrument panel screen.
- The lighting control is at position **0** or **AUTO**.
- All the headlamps are off.

You can deactivate* this function using the "Main Menu" of the instrument panel screen.

Manual guide-me-home lighting

Temporarily keeping the dipped beam headlamps on after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.



Switching on

☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting stalk.

☞ A further "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

Switching off

The manual guide-me-home lighting switches off automatically after a set time.

Automatic illumination of headlamps

The sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, when a low level of external light is detected or in certain cases of activation of the windscreen wipers.

As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.



Activation

☞ Turn ring **A** to the **"AUTO"** position. The automatic illumination of headlamps is accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen.

Deactivation

☞ Turn ring **A** to a position other than **"AUTO"**. Deactivation is accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen.

* According to country.

Linked with the automatic "Guide-me-home" lighting

The link with the automatic illumination of headlamps provides the "guide-me-home" lighting with the following additional options:

- selection of the duration of lighting for 15, 30 or 60 seconds in the vehicle parameters on the instrument panel screen configuration menu,
- automatic activation of "guide-me-home" lighting when automatic illumination of headlamps is in operation.

Operating fault

In the event of a fault with the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on and a message appears in the instrument panel screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. Therefore, the lighting will not come on automatically.

Do not cover the sunshine sensor, linked with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer operate.

MANUAL HEADLAMP ADJUSTMENT



To avoid dazzling other road users, the height of the halogen bulb headlamps must be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

0. 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
-. 3 people.
1. 5 people.
-. Intermediate setting.
2. 5 people + maximum authorised loads.
-. Intermediate setting.
3. Driver + maximum authorised loads.

Initial setting is position **"0"**.

AUTOMATIC ADJUSTMENT OF DIRECTIONAL HEADLAMPS



To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, this system corrects the height of the xenon headlamp beams automatically and when stationary, depending on the load in the vehicle.

SERVICE If a fault occurs, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel screen.

The system then places your headlamps in the lowest position.

Do not touch the xenon bulbs. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

V

DIRECTIONAL LIGHTING

"Cornering lighting" function

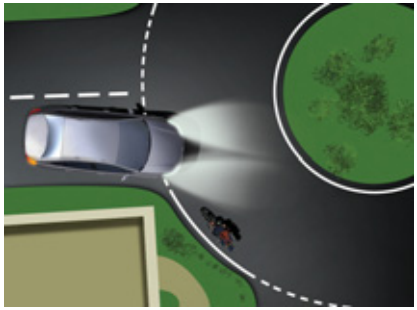
With dipped or main beams, this function provides additional lighting for the inside of a bend, when the vehicle speed is below 25 mph (approx 40 km/h).

This lighting is most useful when travelling at low and medium speed (urban driving, winding road, intersections, parking manoeuvres...).

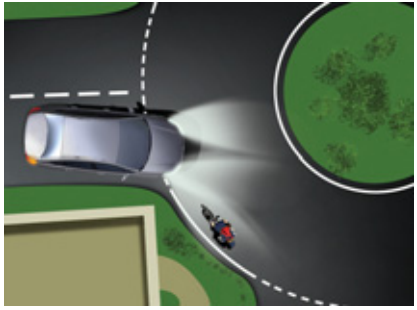
Activation

This function is activated:

- when the direction indicator is activated,
- from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.



without cornering lighting



with cornering lighting

Deactivation

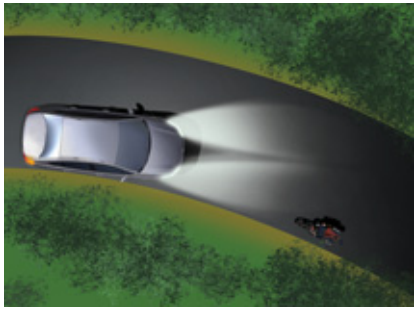
This function is deactivated:

- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel,
- when stationary or at very low speed,
- when reverse gear is engaged,
- when the directional headlamps are switched off.

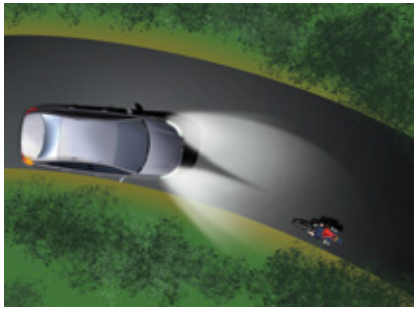
Directional headlamps function

When the dipped or main beam headlamps are on, this function, associated with the "cornering lighting" function, enables the light beam to follow the direction of the road.

The use of this function, linked with the xenon headlamps only, considerably improves the quality of your lighting when cornering.



without directional lighting



with directional lighting

Programming

The function is activated or deactivated via the instrument panel screen "Main Menu".

To do this, select "Vehicle parameters \ Lighting \ Directional headlamps".

Operating fault

If a fault occurs, this warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message in the multifunction screen.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

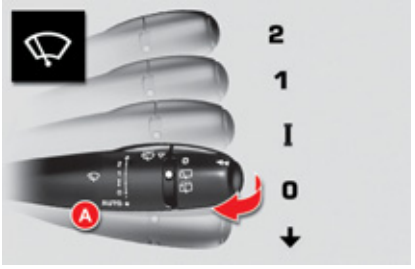
When stationary or moving at very low speed or when reverse gear is engaged, the function is inactive.

The status of the function remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

WIPER CONTROLS

System for selection and control of the various front and rear wiping modes for the elimination of rain and cleaning.

The vehicle's front and rear wipers are designed to improve the driver's visibility progressively according to the climatic conditions.



Programming

Various automatic wiper control modes are also available according to the following options:

- automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

Manual controls

The wiper commands are issued directly by the driver by means of the stalk **A** and the ring **B**.

Windscreen wipers

A. Wiping speed selection stalk.

2 Fast (heavy rain).

1 Normal (moderate rain).

I Intermittent (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).

0 Off.

↓ Single wipe (press down and release).

or

AUTO ↓ Automatic, then single wipe (see the corresponding section).

Rear wiper (Tourer)



B. rear wiper selection ring:

park,

intermittent wipe,

wash-wipe (set duration).

If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a tailgate bicycle carrier, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the instrument panel screen configuration menu.

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper operates if the windscreen wipers are operating.

Programming

The function is activated or deactivated via the instrument panel screen configuration menu.

This function is activated by default.

Windscreen and headlamp wash

☞ Pull the windscreen wiper stalk towards you. The windscreen wash then the windscreen wipers operate for a fixed period.

The headlamp washers only operate when **the dipped beam headlamps are on**.

Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, if rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall.



Activation

This is controlled manually by the driver by moving stalk **A** to the **"AUTO"** position.

It is accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen.

Switching off

This is controlled manually by the driver by moving stalk **A** upwards and returning it to position **"0"**.

It is accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen.

The automatic wiping must be reactivated if the ignition has been off for more than one minute, by pushing stalk **A** downwards.

Operating fault

If an automatic wiping malfunction occurs, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the sunshine sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.

Switch off the automatic wiping when using an automatic car wash.

In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic wiping.

Special position of the windscreen wipers



This position permits release of the windscreen wiper blades.

It is used for cleaning or replacement of the blades. It can also be useful, in winter, to detach the blades from the windscreen.

☞ Any action on the wiper stalk in the minute after switching off the ignition places the blades vertically on the screen.

☞ To park the blades again, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper stalk.

To maintain the effectiveness of the "flat-blade" type of wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

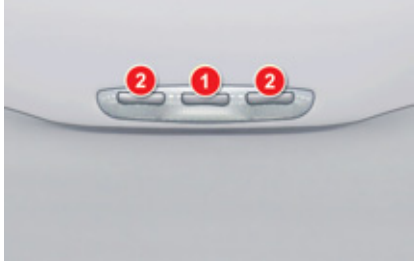
COURTESY LAMPS

Front courtesy lamp



1. **Front courtesy lamp**
2. **Map reading lamps**

Rear courtesy lamp



1. **Rear courtesy lamp**
2. **Map reading lamps**



In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when a door is opened,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.



Lighting off.



Lighting on.

In lighting on mode, different lighting times are available:
- with the ignition off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

Map reading lamps

☞ With the ignition on, press the corresponding switch.

Panoramic sunroof rear reading lamps (Tourer)



With the key in position or with the ignition on:

☞ Press the corresponding switch.

The reading lamp concerned comes on for ten minutes.

The rear reading lamps come on:
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when the vehicle is unlocked.

They switch off gradually:
- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on.

INTERIOR MOOD LIGHTING

Your vehicle is equipped with interior mood lighting for the centre console and the door handles.





Central console

The lamps are located on the roof console, near the front interior lamp. They illuminate the central console.

Operation

These lamps are activated with the automatic illumination of headlamps, when the ambient light is poor. They are deactivated when the instrument panel is off.

The intensity of the lighting varies along with that of the instrument panel.

☞ Press buttons **A** to increase or reduce the intensity of the lighting.

Lighting for door opening controls



This is located on the front and rear interior door opening controls.

The rear door opening controls lighting is deactivated if the child lock is on.

WELCOME LIGHTING

The welcome lighting is made up of:
- The interior (roof) lamps.
- The floor lighting.
- The pavement lighting when a door is open.

Floor lighting



In the front of the vehicle, when a door is opened, this illuminates the interior of the vehicle.

Pavement lighting



With the door open, this illuminates the ground next to the vehicle.

SUN VISOR

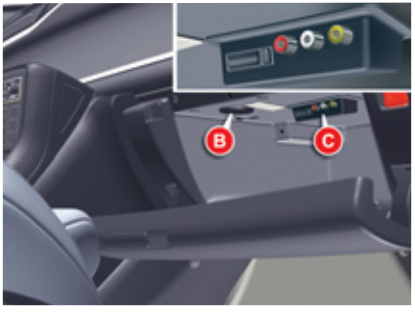


☞ With the ignition on, lift the flap; the mirror is illuminated automatically.

To prevent dazzle from ahead, fold the visor downwards.

It can be disengaged from its central fixing and pivoted over to the side windows if required.

COOLED GLOVE BOX



☞ To open the glove box, pull on the handle and lower the lid.

The glove box has a manually closable air conditioning vent **B**.

It has 2 or 3 sockets **C** to connect audio/video equipment, and a slot for a SIM card (see "Audio and Telematics" section).

It has automatic illumination.

! Whilst driving, the glove box should be kept closed.

SKI FLAP



A flap in the backrest, located to the rear of the armrest, facilitates the carrying of long objects.

To open

☞ Lower the rear armrest.
☞ Pull the flap handle down.
☞ Lower the flap.
☞ Load the objects from inside the boot.

Ensure that the objects are well secured and that they do not impede the operation of the gear lever.

MATS



Equipment available for the driver and front passenger.

Removing

- ☞ Slide the seat back as far as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the fixings, then the mat.

Refitting

- ☞ Position the mat correctly,
- ☞ clip the fixings,
- ☞ check that the mat is held is place correctly.

To avoid any interference with the pedals:

- only use mats which are suitable for the fixings already present in the vehicle. The use of these fixings is essential,
- never fit more than 1 mat.

The use of a mat not approved by CITROËN may obstruct access to the pedals and hinder the cruise control/speed limiter function.

Floor mats approved by CITROËN are fitted with a 3rd fixing located in the pedal area to avoid any risk of interference with the pedals.

FRONT ARMREST



Comfort and storage system for the driver and front passenger.

Adjustment

To optimise your driving position:

- ☞ lift the control **A**,
- ☞ push the armrest forwards.

The armrest returns to its initial position when you push it rearwards.

Cup-holder / USB port



The front armrest includes a cup holder and a USB port.

The USB port allows connection of a portable device, such as a USB memory stick, sending the audio files to your audio system so that they can be heard via the vehicle's speakers.

- ☞ Lift the armrest to access the cup holder or the USB port.

Driver's oddments tray



☞ Pull the handle towards you.

Cup-holder

The rear cup-holder **A** is located in the rear central armrest.

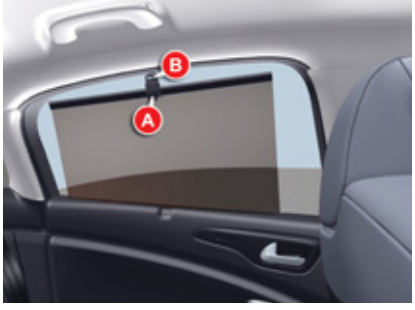
☞ Lower the rear armrest.

☞ Pull forwards to extract the cup-holder.

Storage

☞ Lift up the upper part of the rear central armrest to access storage space **B**.

SIDE BLINDS



☞ Pull on the tab **A** and position the blind on the hook **B**.

REAR ARMREST



Comfort and storage system for the rear passengers.

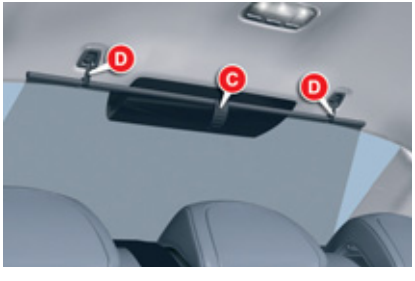
12 V ACCESSORIES SOCKET



This is located in the rear ashtray.

Max power: 100 W.

REAR BLIND (SALOON)



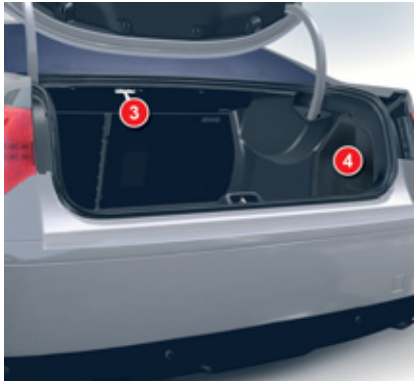
☞ pull on the tab **C** to unreel the blind,

☞ position the blind on the hooks **D**.

BOOT FITTINGS (SALOON)



1. Battery location for vehicles with V6 HDi engine.
2. Boot floor (spare wheel storage).



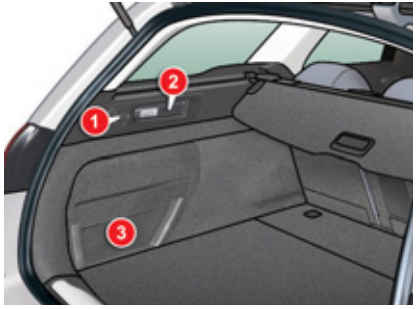
3. Boot lamp.
4. Location for 6 CD changer.

Luggage securing rings

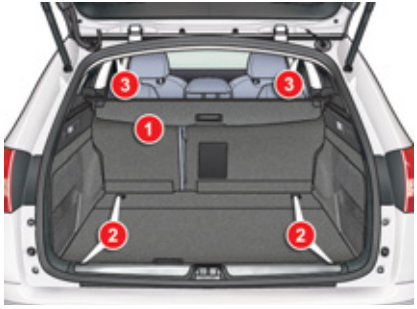
☞ Use the 4 securing rings on the boot floor to secure your luggage.

For safety reasons in the event of sharp braking, you are advised to place heavy objects as far forward in the boot as possible.

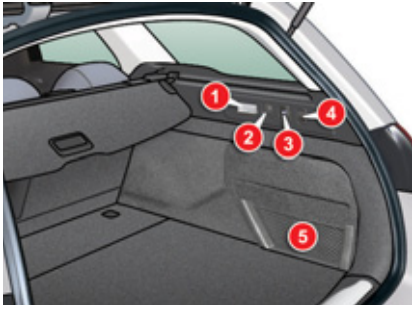
BOOT FITTINGS (TOURER)



1. **Hook**
   For shopping bags.
2. **Torch**
   To recharge, return it to its storage position.
3. **Storage net** or **Battery compartment (for vehicles with 3 litre V6 HDi engine).**
   This provides access to the battery.



1. **Luggage-cover blind**
   (see details on following page)
2. **Luggage securing rings**
   Use the 4 stowing rings provided on the boot floor to secure your loads.
   For safety reasons in the event of sharp braking, you are advised to place heavy objects as far forwards as possible.
3. **Hooks**
   These allow a cargo net to be fitted (see details on following page).



1. **Boot lamp**
2. **12 V accessories socket (100 W maximum)**
   Cigarette lighter type 12 volt socket. It is located on the rear right-hand trim.
3. **Loading height control**
   You can change the height of the vehicle to make loading or unloading easier.
4. **Hook**
   For shopping bags.
5. **Storage net** or **closed housing**
   Location for the 6 CD changer.

LUGGAGE COVER (TOURER)



To roll up

☞ Press the handle (PRESS) gently. The luggage cover rolls up automatically.

The moving part **A** can be folded along the rear bench seat backrest.



To remove

☞ Compress the control **1** and lift the luggage cover on the right then on the left to remove it.



To install

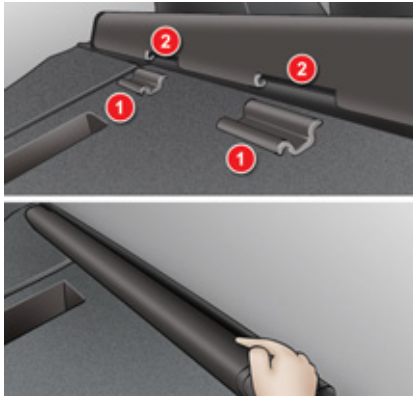
☞ Position the left-hand end of the luggage cover roller in its location **B** behind the rear bench seat.

☞ Compress the roller control **1** and put the roller in place in its location **C** on the right.

☞ Release the control to secure the luggage cover.

☞ Unroll it to its fastening on the rear pillar.

High load retaining net (Tourer)



Hooked onto the special upper and lower fixings, this permits use of the entire loading volume up to the roof:

- behind the rear seats (row 2),
- behind the front seats (row 1) when the rear seats are folded.

When positioning the net, check that the strap loops are visible from the boot; this will make slackening or tightening easier.

VI



Installation

- ☞ fold down the backs of the rear seats,
- ☞ position the high load retaining net roller above the two rails **1** located behind the rear seats (2/3 bench seat). The two notches **2** must be placed above the two rails,
- ☞ slide the two rails **1** into the notches **2** and push the roller (lengthways) from right to left to secure it,
- ☞ reposition the rear seat backs.

Row 1



To use it in row 1:

- ☞ fold down the backs of the rear seats,
- ☞ open the covers **3** of the corresponding upper fixings,
- ☞ unroll the high load retaining net and position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding fixing cover. Check that the hook is secured in the rail located inside the cover **3**,
- ☞ pull the high load retaining net's metal bar to position the other hook in the second fixing cover.

Row 2



To use it in row 2:

- ☞ open the covers **4** of the corresponding upper fixings,
- ☞ from the rear bench seat, unroll the high load retaining net, pushing it to detach it from the retaining hooks,
- ☞ position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding fixing cover. Check that the hook is secured in the rail located inside the cover,
- ☞ position the other hook in the second fixing cover and pull the metal bar towards you.

GENERAL POINTS RELATING TO CHILD SEATS

Although one of CITROËN's main criteria when designing your vehicle, the safety of your children also depends on you.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- in accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings*,
- **statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats,**
- **a child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rearwards-facing" position both in the front and in the rear.**

CITROËN recommends that children should travel in the **rear seats** of your vehicle:

- **"rearwards-facing"** up to the age of 2,
- **"forwards-facing"** over the age of 2.

CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT

"Rearwards-facing"

When a "rearwards-facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, it is essential that the passenger airbag is deactivated. Otherwise, **the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were to inflate**.

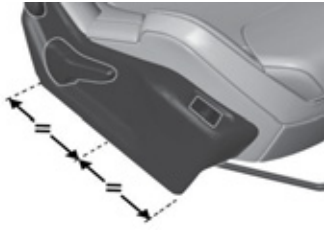


"Forwards-facing"

When a "forwards-facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the intermediate longitudinal position with the seat back upright and leave the passenger airbag activated.



Intermediate longitudinal position



* The rules for carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the current legislation in your country.

VII





Passenger airbag OFF

Refer to the advice given on the label present on both sides of the passenger's sun visor.





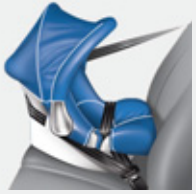
VII

! To assure the safety of your child, you must deactivate the passenger's front airbag when you install a child seat in the rearwards facing position on the front passenger's seat.

Otherwise, there is a risk that the child could be seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

CHILD SEATS RECOMMENDED BY CITROËN

CITROËN offers a complete range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**:

<table>
<tr><th>Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg</th><th>Groups 1, 2 and 3: from 9 to 36 kg</th></tr>
<tr><td>
L1
"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus"
Installed in the rearwards-facing position.</td><td>
L2
"KIDDY Comfort Pro"
The impact shield must be used for carrying young children (from 9 to 18 kg).</td></tr>
<tr><th colspan="2">Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">
L4
"KLIPPAN Optima"
From the age of 6 years (approximately 22 kg), the booster is used on its own.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">
L5
"RÖMER KIDFIX"
Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings.
The child is restrained by the seat belt.</td></tr>
</table>

POSITIONS FOR CHILD SEATS SECURED USING THE SEAT BELT

In conformity with European law, this table shows you the possibilities for the installation of universally approved child seats (a) using a seat belt, depending on the weight of the child and the seating position in the vehicle.

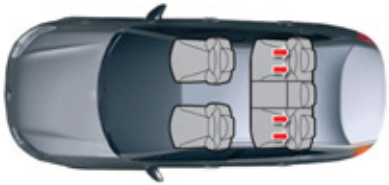
	Seat position(s)	Weight of child			
		Groups 0 (c) and 0+ **< 13 kg**	Group 1 **9 to 18 kg**	Group 2 **15 to 25 kg**	Group 3 **22 to 36 kg**
Row 1	Front passenger (b) with height adjustment	**U (R)**	**U (R)**	**U (R)**	**U (R)**
	Front passenger (b) without height adjustment	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
Row 2	Outer rear	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
	Centre rear	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**

(a) Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.
(b) Consult the current legislation for your country before driving with your child in this seat.
(c) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Shells and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.
U: seat position suitable for installation of universally approved rearwards-facing and/or forwards-facing child seat.
U (R): As **U**, with the vehicle seat, which must be adjusted to the highest position.

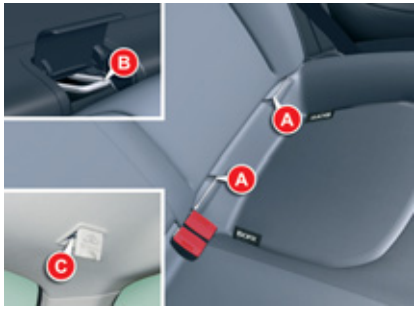
"ISOFIX" MOUNTINGS

Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the **new** ISOFIX **regulations**.

The outer rear seats are fitted with regulation ISOFIX mountings.



In the rear



Saloon

These are three rings for each outer rear seat:

- two lower rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat back and cushion, indicated by a label,
- an upper ring **B**, fixed to the rear shelf, concealed under a flap with the logo TOP TETHER behind the head restraint.

Tourer

- two lower rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat back and cushion, indicated by a label,
- an upper ring **C**, fixed to the roof on the boot side, concealed under a flap with the logo TOP TETHER.

This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.

The **ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two locks which are secured easily on the two rings **A**, following installation of the guides (supplied with the seat).

Some also have an **upper strap** which is attached to the ring **B** or **C**.

To attach this strap in the rear, remove the vehicle seat's head restraint and stow it. Lift the cover on the rear shelf (Saloon) or the roof (Tourer). Then fix the hook on the ring **B** or **C** and tighten the upper strap.

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

For information regarding the ISOFIX child seats which can be installed in your vehicle, consult the table of positions for fitting ISOFIX child seats.

ADVICE ON CHILD SEATS

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

When installing a child seat using the seat belt, check that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle.

Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses **keeping the slack** in relation to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

For optimum installation of the "forwards-facing" child seat, ensure that the back of the child seat is in contact with the back of the vehicle's seat and that the head restraint does not cause any discomfort.

If the head restraint has to be removed, ensure that it is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking.

Children under the age of 10 must not travel in the "forwards-facing" position on the front passenger seat, unless the rear seats are already occupied by other children, cannot be used or are absent.

Deactivate the passenger airbag* when a "rearwards-facing" child seat is installed on the front seat. Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were to inflate.

Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.

CITROËN recommends the use of a booster seat which has a back, fitted with a seat belt guide at shoulder level.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- one or more children alone and unsupervised in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

To prevent accidental opening of the doors, use the "Child lock".

Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

* According to country and current local legislation.

ISOFIX CHILD SEAT RECOMMENDED BY CITROËN AND APPROVED FOR YOUR VEHICLE

RÖMER BabySafe Plus ISOFIX (size category **E**)	
Group 0+: up to 13 kg	
	Installed in the rearwards-facing position using an ISOFIX base which is attached to the rings **A**. The stay on the ISOFIX base must be adjusted in height so that it is in contact with the floor of the vehicle.
RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX (size category **B1**)	
Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg	
	Installed in the forwards-facing position. Fitted with an upper strap to be secured on the upper ring **B** or **C**, referred to as the TOP TETHER. Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying.

This child seat can also be used on seats which are not fitted with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be attached to the vehicle seat using the three point seat belt.

Follow the instructions for fitting the child seat given in the seat manufacturer's installation guide.

POSITIONS FOR FITTING ISOFIX CHILD SEATS

In conformity with European law (ECE 16), this table shows you the possibilities for the installation of ISOFIX child seats to seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mounting points.

For ISOFIX universal and semi-universal child seats, the ISOFIX size class, defined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is shown on the child seat to the right of the ISOFIX logo.

	Weight of child/Age given as a guide										
	Up to 10 kg (group 0) Up to around 6 months		**Up to 10 kg (group 0) Up to 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to around 1 year			**9 to 18 kg (group 1)** Approx 1 to 3 years				
Type of ISOFIX child seat	**Shell**		**"Rearwards-facing"**			**"Rearwards-facing"**		**"Forwards-facing"**		
ISOFIX size class	**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
Universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats can be installed on: - **Front passenger seat**	**X**		**IL-SU**			**IL-SU**		**IUF/IL-SU**		
- **Outer rear seats**	**IL-SU***		**IL-SU**			**IL-SU**		**IUF/IL-SU**		
- **Centre rear seat**			**Non ISOFIX seat position**							

IUF: Seat position suitable for installation of an **I**sofix **U**niversal "**F**orwards-facing" seat attached using the top tether.

IL-SU: Seat position suitable for installation of an **I**SOFIX **S**emi-**U**niversal child seat, either:

- "rearwards-facing" fitted with an upper strap or a stay,
- "forwards-facing" fitted with a stay,
- a shell fitted with an upper strap or a stay.

To attach the upper strap, refer to the "ISOFIX mountings" paragraph.

X: Seat not suitable for installation of an ISOFIX seat of the size class indicated

* The ISOFIX shell, fixed to the lower rings of an ISOFIX seat, occupies two rear seats.

ELECTRIC CHILD LOCK

Remote control system to prevent opening of the rear doors using their interior controls and use of the rear electric windows.



The control is located on the driver's door, with the electric window controls.

Activation

☞ Press button **A**.

The indicator lamp in button **A** comes on, accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen.

Deactivation

☞ Press button **A** again.

The indicator lamp in button **A** goes off, accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen.

This indicator lamp remains off until the child lock is activated.

Any other status of the indicator lamp indicates a fault with the electric child lock. Have it checked by a CITROËN or a qualified workshop.

This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control.

Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition.

Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is deactivated automatically to permit the exit of the rear passengers.

DIRECTION INDICATORS

Selection of the left or right direction indicators to signal a change of direction of the vehicle.



☞ Left: lower the lighting stalk beyond the point of resistance.

☞ Right: raise the lighting stalk beyond the point of resistance.

"Motorway" function

☞ Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

HAZARD WARNING LAMPS

A visual warning by means of the direction indicators to alert other road users to a vehicle breakdown, towing or accident.



☞ Press this button, the direction indicators flash.

They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically.

They switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

☞ You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

HORN

Audible warning to alert other road users to an imminent danger.





☞ Press the left or right-hand part of the fixed centred controls steering wheel.

Use the horn moderately and only in the following cases:

- immediate danger,
- overtaking a cyclist or pedestrian
- when approaching an area where there is no visibility.

EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL



This system allows you to make an emergency or assistance call to the emergency services or to the dedicated CITROËN service.

For more information on the use of this function, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

VIII

TYRE UNDER-INFLATION DETECTION

System which automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving.

Choice of detection

This function provides warning of tyres that are under-inflated or punctured.

Automatic detection

Sensors monitor the tyre pressures.

In the event of an anomaly, a message will appear in the instrument panel screen.

Driver request detection

You can check the tyre pressures at any time.

☞ Press on button **A** (CHECK); the information will be displayed in the instrument panel screen.



Tyre pressures OK display



☞ Press on button **A** (CHECK).

The system indicates to you that the tyres are correctly inflated.

This information is only available on request by the driver.

Under-inflated tyre



automatic detection



detection on request

Automatic detection:

A message indicates which tyre is under-inflated.

Driver request detection:

The vehicle outline indicates the under-inflated tyre(s).

The message is accompanied by illumination of the **SERVICE** warning lamp and an audible beep.

☞ Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible.

VIII

Punctured tyre



automatic detection



detection on request

Automatic detection:

A message indicates which tyre is punctured.

Driver request detection:

The vehicle outline indicates the punctured tyre(s).

The message is accompanied by illumination of the **STOP** warning lamp and an audible beep.

Wheel not monitored



automatic detection



detection on request

Automatic detection:

A message indicates to you which wheel is not monitored.

Driver request detection:

The vehicle outline indicates the wheel(s) which is/are not monitored.

☞ The message is accompanied by illumination of the **SERVICE** warning lamp and an audible beep. have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

☞ If you have fitted wheels that are not equipped with tyre deflation detection (wheels with snow tyres, etc.), contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The deflation detection system is a driving aid, but which does not absolve the driver from the need to be vigilant and responsible.

This system does not dispense with the requirement to check the tyres on a regular basis (see "Identification markings") to ensure optimum vehicle behaviour and to avoid premature tyre wear under certain conditions (high load, high speed).

Do not forget to check the tyre pressure of the spare wheel.

Any repair or replacement of a tyre on a wheel that is equipped with a sensor must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The system may suffer from temporary interference caused by electro-magnetic transmissions on frequencies close to that use by the system.

VIII

BRAKING ASSISTANCE SYSTEMS

Group of supplementary systems which help you to obtain optimum braking in complete safety in emergency situations:

- anti-lock braking system (ABS),
- electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance (EBA).

Anti-lock braking system and electronic brake force distribution

Linked systems which improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking, in particular on poor or slippery surfaces.

Activation

The anti-lock braking system comes into operation automatically when there is a risk of wheel lock.

Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibration of the brake pedal.

When braking in an emergency, press very firmly without releasing the pressure.

Operating fault



If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel screen, it indicates a fault with the anti-lock braking system which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.



If this warning lamp comes on, together with the **STOP** and **ABS** warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel screen, it indicates a fault with the electronic brake force distribution which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.

You MUST stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

In both cases, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When replacing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that they conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Emergency braking assistance

System which, in an emergency, enables you to obtain the optimum braking pressure more quickly, thus reducing the stopping distance.

Activation

It is triggered by the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed.

The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

When braking in an emergency, press firmly without releasing the pressure.

TRAJECTORY CONTROL SYSTEMS

Anti-slip regulation (ASR) and electronic stability programme (ESP)

The anti-slip regulation (also known as Traction Control) optimises traction to prevent skidding of the wheels, by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine.

The electronic stability programme acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to keep the vehicle on the trajectory required by the driver, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Intelligent traction control system ("Snow motion")

Your vehicle has a system to improve traction on snow: **intelligent traction control**.

This system detects situations of low adhesion that might make moving off and progress difficult on deep fresh snow or compacted snow.

In these situations the **intelligent traction control** system regulates the amount of wheel slip to optimise the traction and trajectory control of your vehicle.

For vehicles with Hydractive III + suspension, manual adjustment of ground clearance to the intermediate position improves further the ability to make progress in deep snow (see the relevant paragraph).

The use of snow tyres is strongly recommended on surfaces with low adhesion.

Activation

These systems are activated automatically each time the vehicle is started.

They come into operation in the event of a grip or trajectory problem.



This is indicated by flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

Deactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground...), it may be advisable to deactivate the ASR and ESP systems, so that the wheels can move freely and regain grip.



☞ Press the **"ESP OFF"** button, located in the middle of the dashboard.



If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the indicator lamp in the button comes on, this indicates that the ASR and ESP systems are deactivated.

It is recommended that these systems be reactivated as soon as possible.

Reactivation

Below 30 mph (50 km/h), press the **"ESP OFF"** button to reactivate these systems.

They are reactivated automatically above 30 mph (50 km/h) or every time the ignition is switched off.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel screen, this indicates a fault with these systems.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The ESP/ASR systems offer exceptional safety in normal driving, but this should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

The correct operation of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations regarding the wheels (tyres and rims), the braking components, the electronic components and observation of the assembly and repair procedures used by CITROËN dealers.

After an impact, have these systems checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

SEAT BELTS



Front seat belts

The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning system and force limiter.

This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front impact.

Depending on the seriousness of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belt against the body of the occupant.

The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.

The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt against the chest of the occupant, so increasing his protection.

Fastening

- Pull the belt down in front of you in a steady movement, making sure that it does not become twisted.
- Press the fastening into its buckle.
- Check that it is properly secured and that the automatic locking mechanism operates correctly by pulling sharply on the belt strap.
- The lap strap should be positioned as low down as possible in the lap and as tight as possible.
- The diagonal strap should be positioned across the chest and away from the neck.

Each belt has a reel that adjusts its length automatically to the girth of the seat occupant.

Height adjustment



When correctly adjusted, the seat belt shoulder strap falls over the middle of the shoulder.

☞ To adjust the belt, squeeze the control and slide it in the direction required.

Unfastening

☞ To unfasten the belt, press on the red button in the buckle.

The belt retracts automatically when not in use.

Rear seat belts



Each rear seat is fitted with a three-point inertia reel seat belt with force limiter.

Fastening

☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.

☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

☞ Press the red button on the buckle.

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all restrained securely before setting off.

Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.

Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully.

The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.

Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.

The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

The inertia reels are fitted with an automatic locking device which comes into operation in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. You can release the device by pulling firmly on the strap and releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not bear any trace of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

Have your seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.

After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.

Never allow a child to travel on your lap.

In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact, the pretensioning device may be deployed before and independently of the airbags. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.

Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Airbags

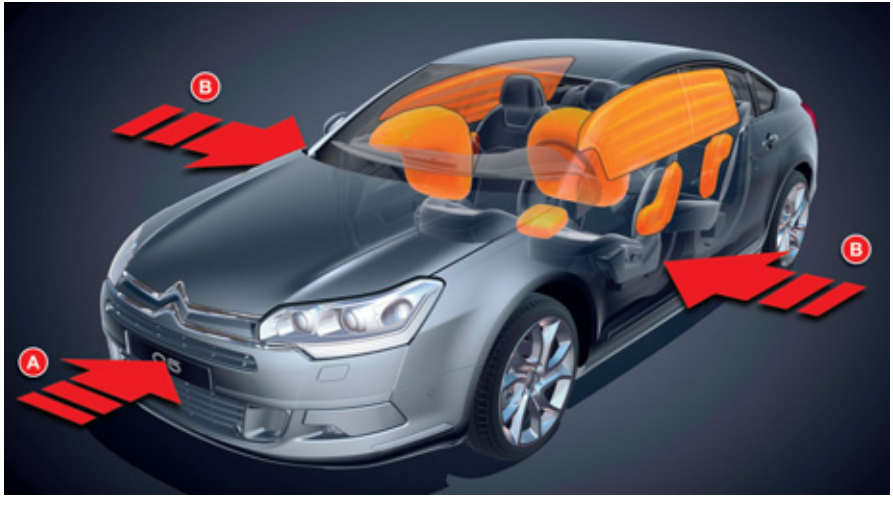
System designed to maximise the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions. It supplements the action of the force-limiting seat belts.

If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and protect the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain roll-over conditions, the airbags will not be deployed; the seat belt alone is sufficient to provide optimum protection in these situations.

The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only operate once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not operate.



Impact detection zones

A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

Deployment of the airbag(s) is accompanied by a slight emission of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

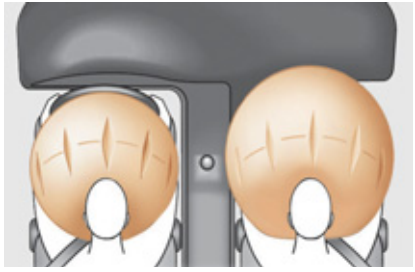
This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation.

The noise of the detonation may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags

System which protects the head and chest of the driver and front passenger in the event of a front impact.

The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.



Deployment

The airbags are deployed simultaneously, unless the passenger's front airbag is deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.

The front airbag inflates between the front occupant of the vehicle and the dashboard to cushion their forward movement.

Deactivation



Only the front passenger's airbag can be deactivated:

- ☞ **with the ignition off**, insert the key in the passenger airbag deactivation switch **1**,
- ☞ turn it to the **"OFF"** position,
- ☞ then, remove the key keeping the switch in this position.

This warning lamp comes on in the roof console screen when the ignition is on and until the airbag is reactivated.

To assure the safety of your child, the passenger's airbag must be deactivated when you install a "rearwards-facing" child seat on the front passenger seat.

Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Activation

When you remove the child seat, turn switch **1** to the **"ON"** position to reactivate the airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.

Operating fault

If this symbol appears in the instrument panel screen, accompanied by an audible warning and a message, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

If this warning lamp flashes, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

If both airbag warning lamps come on continuously, do not install a "rearwards-facing" child seat on the front passenger seat.

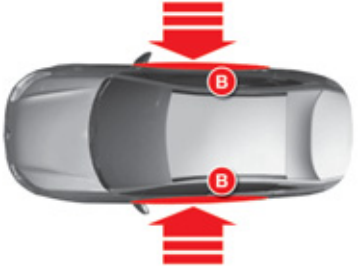
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

VIII

Lateral airbags*

System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest.

Each lateral airbag is fitted in the front seat back frame, on the outer side.

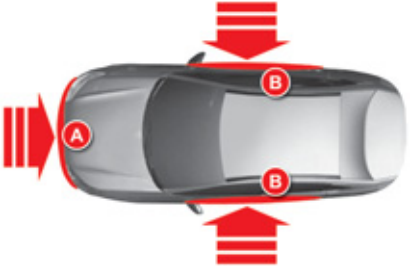


Deployment

It is deployed unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The lateral airbag inflates between the front occupant of the vehicle and the corresponding door trim panel.

Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

Curtain airbags*

System which protects the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of head injuries.

Each curtain airbag is fitted in the pillars and the upper part of the passenger compartment.

Deployment

It is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbag may not be deployed.

The airbag is not deployed in the event of a rear or front collision.

Operating fault



If this symbol appears in the instrument panel screen, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

* According to country.

VIII

For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the following safety rules:

Sit in a normal upright position.

Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object...). This could hamper the operation of the airbags or injure the occupants.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag system must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

If possible, do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, you can contact a CITROËN dealer (see "Practical information - § Accessories").

Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backs (clothing...). This could cause injury to the chest or arms if the lateral airbag is deployed.

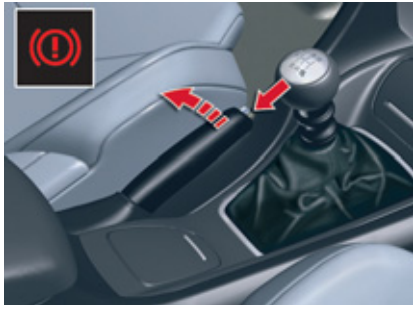
Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof. This could cause injury to the head if the curtain airbag is deployed.

If fitted on your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

MANUAL PARKING BRAKE



Mechanical device for immobilising the vehicle when stationary.

Application

☞ Pull the parking brake lever up to immobilise your vehicle.

To facilitate the action on the lever, you are recommended to press the brake pedal at the same time.

In all circumstances, as a precautionary measure, engage first gear.

On steep gradients, turn the steering wheel towards the pavement.

Release

☞ Press on the end of the lever whilst pulling it then lower it fully.

This warning lamp comes on if the parking brake is engaged or not fully released.

If the parking brake is released, the illumination of this warning lamp along with the **STOP** warning lamp indicates that the brake fluid level is low or a fault with the brake force distributor.

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE



The electric parking brake combines 2 operating modes:

- **AUTOMATIC**

  Automatic application when the engine stops and automatic release on use of the accelerator (automatic operation by default),
- **MANUAL**

  Manual application / release of the parking brake is always possible by pulling control lever **A** while pressing the brake pedal.

Automatic operation

Application with the engine off

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is automatically applied when the engine is switched off.**

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A** coming on,
- this warning lamp in the instrument panel coming on,
- display of a message "parking brake on" in the instrument panel screen.

The noise of operation will confirm to you the application/ release of your electric parking brake.

! Before leaving the vehicle, check that warning lamp **P** and the warning lamp in the instrument panel are on fixed (not flashing).

Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.

Application with the engine running

With the engine running and the vehicle stationary, in order to immobilise the vehicle you need to manually apply the parking brake by **pulling** on control lever **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A** coming on,
- this warning lamp in the instrument panel coming on,
- display of a message "parking brake on" in the instrument panel screen.

When the driver's door is opened, a beep is heard and a message displayed if the parking brake has not been applied.

! Before leaving the vehicle, check that warning lamp **P** and the warning lamp in the instrument panel are on fixed (not flashing).

IX

Release

The electric parking brake **releases automatically and progressively** when you press the accelerator :

- ☞ with a **manual gearbox** (first gear or reverse gear engaged), press down fully on the clutch pedal then press on the accelerator pedal and move off.
- ☞ with an **automatic gearbox**, accelerate with the selector in position **D**, **M** or **R**.

Full release of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A** going off,
- this warning lamp in the instrument panel going off,
- display of a message "parking brake off" in the instrument panel screen.

When stationary, with the engine running, do not press the accelerator pedal unnecessarily (particularly when starting the engine, including in neutral), as you may release the parking brake.

Do not place any object (packet of cigarettes, telephone...) between the gear lever and the electric parking brake control.

Activation / Deactivation of the automatic functions

Depending on the country of sale, automatic application when switching off the engine and automatic release when moving off can be deactivated. The activation / deactivation is done in the instrument panel screen configuration menu. Select "Vehicle parameters / Comfort / Auto parking brake".

Deactivation of these functions is signalled by this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

With the automatic functions deactivated, the parking brake must be applied and released manually.

In some special circumstances, with the engine not running, (towing, icy conditions...) the automatic parking brake can be released manually, with the key in the running position.

If the configuration menu does not have the option to activate / deactivate the automatic functions, this can be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Manual operation

Manual application / release of the parking brake is always possible.



Application

With the vehicle stationary, to apply the parking brake whether the engine is running or off, **pull** on control lever **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A** coming on,
- this warning lamp in the instrument panel coming on,
- display of a message "parking brake on" in the instrument panel screen.

When the driver's door is opened with the engine running, a message is displayed accompanied by an audible signal if the parking brake has not been applied.

Release

With the ignition on or the engine running, to release the parking brake, press on the brake pedal, **push then release** control lever **A**.

The full application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A** going off,
- this warning lamp in the instrument panel going off,
- display of a message "parking brake released" in the instrument panel screen.

If you push control lever **A** without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and the message "Foot on brake" will be displayed in the instrument panel.

When stationary, with the engine running, do not press the accelerator pedal unnecessarily, as you may release the parking brake.

Maximum application

If necessary, you can utilise **maximum application** of the parking brake. It is obtained by means of a **long pull** on control lever **A**, until you see the message "Max application of the parking brake" and a beep is heard.

Maximum application is essential:

- in the case of a vehicle towing a caravan or a trailer, if the automatic functions are activated but you are applying the parking brake manually,
- when the effective gradient you are parked on is variable (e.g. on a ferry, in a lorry, during towing).
- in the case of towing, a loaded vehicle or parking on a gradient, turn the front wheels towards the pavement and engage a gear when you park.
- after a maximum application, the release time will be longer.

Particular situations

In certain situations (starting the engine...), the parking brake can automatically alter its level of application. This is normal operation.

To advance your vehicle a few centimetres without starting the engine, but with the ignition on, press on the brake pedal and release the parking brake **by pushing** then **releasing** control lever **A**.

The full release of the parking brake is confirmed by the warning lamp **P** in the control lever and the warning lamp in the instrument panel going off and the display of a message "parking brake off" in the instrument panel screen.

If the parking brake malfunctions **while applied** or if the battery is flat, an emergency release is still possible.

To ensure correct operation of the parking brake and therefore your safety, the number of successive application/release operations is limited to eight.

If this number is exceeded, you are warned by the message "Parking brake faulty" and a warning lamp flashes.

Dynamic emergency braking



In the event of a failure of the vehicle's main braking system or in an exceptional situation (e.g. driver taken ill, under instruction, etc) pull and hold control lever **A** to stop the vehicle.

The electronic stability programme (ESP) provides stability during dynamic emergency braking.

If there is a fault with the dynamic emergency braking, one of the following messages will be displayed in the instrument panel screen:

- "Parking brake faulty".
- "Parking brake control faulty".

If a failure of the ESP system is signalled by the lighting of this warning lamp, then braking stability is not guaranteed. In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull release" actions on control lever **A**.

The dynamic emergency braking should only be used in exceptional circumstances.

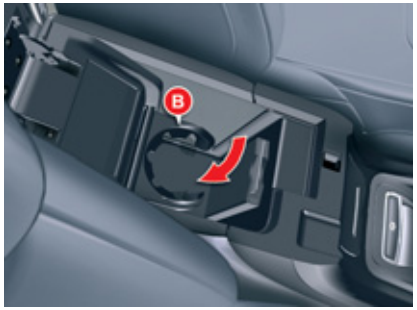
If the vehicle cannot be immobilised, do not operate the emergency release. Your vehicle may run away if on a slope. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Emergency parking brake release



In the event of the electric parking brake failing to release, an emergency device can be used to release the parking brake manually, provided that it is possible to immobilise the vehicle while the procedure is carried out.

- If you can start the vehicle: with the engine running, immobilise the vehicle by applying the foot brake while the operation is being carried out.
- If you are unable to start the vehicle (flat battery for example): do not use this device and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. However, if you are obliged to proceed, first immobilise your vehicle securely and then follow the instructions below.



- On sloping ground: immobilise the vehicle by placing the chocks (if your vehicle has them) in front or behind the two front wheels, against the slope

  On level ground: immobilise the vehicle by placing the chocks (if your vehicle has them) in front and behind one of the front wheels.
- Open the lower compartment of the centre armrest by pulling it.
- Ensure that the cup holder **B** is folded away.
- Remove the rubber mat covering the base of the armrest.



- Release the strap from its location **C**.
- Pull the strap to release the brake. A loud knock confirms the release of the brake.
- Take care to put the strap back in its location **C** correctly. Otherwise, it will no longer be possible to apply the brake. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
- Put the rubber mat back in place on the base of the armrest.

This strap does not permit application of the parking brake.

To re-engage the electric parking brake (after rectifying the malfunction or battery failure), give a long pull on the control **A** until the parking brake warning lamp (!) flashes in the instrument panel then give a second long pull until this warning lamp is on fixed.

The time required for the subsequent application may be longer than during normal operation.

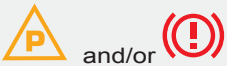
It is essential that the ignition is not switched on until the parking brake has re-engaged (flashing of the warning lamp (!) in the instrument panel then the warning lamp on fixed) to avoid damage to the parking brake.

Take care not to allow moisture or dust in the proximity of the diagnostic socket **D** which is essential for the maintenance of your vehicle.

Operating faults

If any of these instances arises, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

	SITUATION	CONSEQUENCES
1	Electric parking brake problem and display of message **"Parking brake faulty"** and the following warning lamps: 	If the electric parking brake problem warning lamp and the service warning lamp come on, position the vehicle in a safe location (on flat ground, with a gear engaged).
2	Display of the messages **"Parking brake faulty"** and **"Anti roll-back fault"** and of the following warning lamps : 	- The automatic functions are deactivated. - The hill start assist is not available. - The electric parking brake is only available manually.
3	Display of messages **"Parking brake faulty"** and **"Anti roll-back fault"** and of the following warning lamp : 	- Manual release of the electric parking brake is not available. - The hill start assist is not available. - The automatic functions and manual application are still available.

	SITUATION	CONSEQUENCES
4	Display of messages **"Parking brake faulty"** and **"Anti roll-back fault"** and of the following warning lamps : 	- The automatic functions are deactivated. - The hill start assist is not available. To apply the electric parking brake: ☞ Immobilise the vehicle and switch off the ignition ☞ Pull the control lever for at least 5 seconds or until maximum application. ☞ Switch on the ignition and check that the electric parking brake warning lamps are on. - Application may take longer than in normal operation. - If warning lamp **(!)** flashes or if the warning lamps do not come on when the ignition is switched on, this method does not work. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. To release the electric parking brake: ☞ Switch on the ignition. ☞ Push the control lever and hold it for approximately 3 seconds.
5	Display of message **"Parking brake control faulty – automatic mode activated"** and the following warning lamps: 	- Only the functions for automatic application on switching off the engine and automatic release on acceleration are available. - Manual application/release of the electric parking brake and dynamic emergency braking are unavailable.
6	Display of message **"Parking brake faulty"** and of the following warning lamp: 	- Application of the parking brake is not guaranteed. - The parking brake is temporarily unavailable. It this situation arises: ☞ Wait approximately 3 minutes. ☞ After 3 minutes, if the warning lamp is still flashing, try to reinitialise the parking brake, either by pushing and releasing the control **A** while pressing the brake pedal or by means of a long pull on control lever **A**.
7	Battery problem 	- Illumination of the battery warning lamp makes it essential to stop the vehicle as soon as traffic allows. Stop and immobilise your vehicle. - Apply the electric parking brake before switching off the engine.

HILL START ASSIST

System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

This function is only active when:

- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- in certain conditions on a gradient,
- with the driver's door closed.

The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated.

Operation



On an ascending gradient, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a brief moment when you release the brake pedal:

- provided you are in first gear or neutral on a manual gearbox,
- provided you are in **D** or **M** on an automatic gearbox.



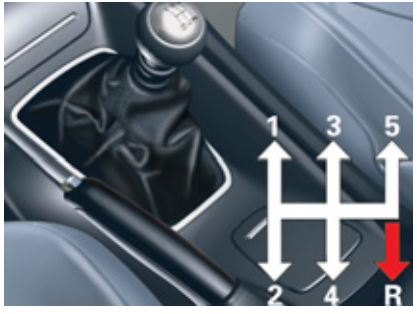
On a descending gradient, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a brief moment when you release the brake pedal.

! Do not exit the vehicle while it is being held in the hill start assist phase.

If you need to leave the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually and ensure that the parking brake warning lamp (in the instrument panel) is on fixed (not flashing).

IX

5-SPEED MANUAL GEARBOX



Starting the vehicle

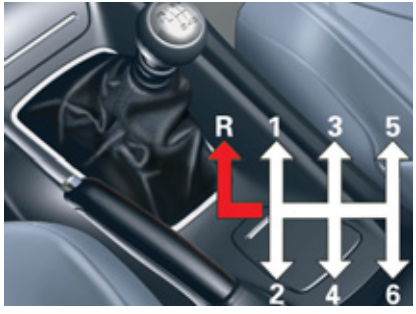
- Check that the gear lever is in neutral.
- Do not touch the accelerator.
- For Diesel engines: turn the key to position **M** and wait until the pre-heating warning lamp switches off if it has come on.
- Operate the starter, turning the key until the engine starts (no more than ten seconds).
- In temperatures lower than 0°C, declutch while operating the starter to facilitate starting.

Engaging reverse gear

- Move the gear lever to the right then back.

Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

6-SPEED MANUAL GEARBOX



Engaging reverse gear

- Raise the ring under the knob (indicated by the arrow) and push the gear lever to the left then forwards.

Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:
- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

IX

GEAR SHIFT INDICATOR*

System which reduces fuel consumption by advising the driver to change up on vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox.

Operation

The system intervenes only when driving economically.

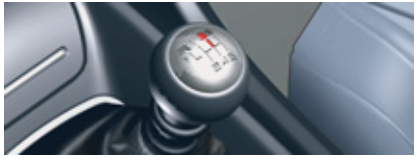
Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one or more gears. You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.

The gear engagement recommendations must not be considered compulsory. In fact, the configuration of the road, the amount of traffic and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the advice given by the system.

This function cannot be deactivated.

Example:

- You are in third gear.



- You press the accelerator pedal moderately.



- The system may suggest that you engage a higher gear, if appropriate.



The information appears in the instrument panel in the form of an arrow accompanied by the suggested gear.

! In the case of driving which makes particular demands on the performance of the engine (firm pressure on the accelerator pedal, for example, when overtaking...), the system will not recommend a gear change.

The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse gear,
- engaging a lower gear.

* According to engine.

6-SPEED ELECTRONIC GEARBOX SYSTEM

Six-speed electronic gearbox system which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation or the pleasure of manual gear changing.

There are two driving modes:

- **automatic** operation for electronic control of the gears by the gearbox,
- **manual** operation for sequential gear changing by the driver,

In automated mode, it remains possible to change gear manually by using the steering mounted control paddles, when overtaking, for example.

A **SPORT** programme is available in automated mode, providing a more dynamic driving style.

Mode selection



☞ automatic mode: gear lever in position **A**,

☞ sequential mode: gear lever in position **M**,

☞ **SPORT** mode: gear lever in position **A** and a press on button **1**.

Steering mounted control paddles



+. Change up paddle to the right of the steering wheel.

☞ Press the back of the **"+"** steering mounted paddle to change up a gear.

-. Change down paddle to the left of the steering wheel.

☞ Press the back of the **"-"** steering mounted paddle to change down a gear.

The steering mounted paddles cannot be used to select neutral or to engage or disengage reverse gear.

IX

Displays in the instrument panel



The position of the gear lever the the driving mode are displayed in dial **C** of the instrument panel.

A selection grille alongside the gear lever also allows you to see the selected position.

Moving off

- To start the engine, the gear lever must be in position **N**.
- Press the brake pedal down fully.
- Operate the starter

  N appears in the instrument panel screen.

N flashes in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, if the gear lever is not in position **N** on starting.

- Select first gear (position **M** or **A**) or reverse (position **R**).
- Release the parking brake unless it is programmed in automatic mode.
- Release the brake pedal, then accelerate.

Reverse

- With your foot on the brake, push the lever forwards.

R

Only engage reverse with the vehicle immobilised.

To avoid any jerking, wait a moment before accelerating.

Neutral

N

Never select position **N** with the vehicle moving.

IX

Automatic operation



☞ Select position **A**.

The gearbox continuously selects the most suitable gear, depending on the:

- style of driving,
- profile of the road,
- vehicle loading.

For optimum acceleration, for example when overtaking another vehicle, press the accelerator pedal firmly past the point of resistance.

Manual gear changing

This selective gear change mode enables you to overtake, for example, while still remaining in automatic mode.

☞ Operate the **+** or **-** steering mounted control paddle.

The gearbox engages the gear requested if the engine speed permits.

After a few moments without any action on the controls, the gearbox resumes automatic control of the gears.

Manual operation



☞ Select position **M**.

The gear change requests are only carried out if the engine speed permits.

It is not necessary to release the accelerator during gear changes.

When braking or slowing down, the gearbox changes down automatically to allow vehicle to accelerate in the correct gear.

The **SPORT** programme is inoperative with sequential operation.

On sharp acceleration, the gearbox will not change up unless the driver acts on the gear lever or the steering mounted paddles.

Never select neutral **N** while the vehicle is moving.

Only engage reverse gear **R** when the vehicle is immobilised with the brake pedal pressed.

IX

SPORT programme



☞ Wit the gear lever at **A** and the engine running, press button **S** to activate the **SPORT** programme, which provides a more dynamic driving style.

S appears in the instrument panel.

☞ Press the **S** button again to switch it off.

S then disappears from the instrument panel screen.

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can choose to:

- move to position **N** to engage neutral,
- leave the gear engaged; in this case, it will not be possible to move the vehicle.

In both cases, you must apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

! When immobilising the vehicle, with the engine running, you must place the gear lever in neutral **N**.

Before carrying out any work in the engine compartment, check that the gear lever is in neutral **N** and that the parking brake is applied.

Operating fault

With the ignition on, the flashing of **AUTO**, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, indicates a fault with the gearbox.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

You must press the brake pedal when starting the engine.

Whatever the circumstances, you must manually apply the parking brake when parking, unless the parking brake is programmed in automatic mode.

IX

STOP & START

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, or other...). The engine restarts automatically - START mode - as soon as you want to move off. The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently.

Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

Operation

Going into engine STOP mode

ECO The **"ECO"** warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby:

- **with the electronic gearbox system**, at speeds below 4 mph (6 km/h), press the brake pedal or put the gear lever in position **N**.

ECO If your vehicle is fitted with the system, a time counter calculates the sum of the periods in STOP mode during a journey. It rests itself to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key.

For your comfort, during parking maoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear.

STOP mode does not affect the functionality of the vehicle, such as for example, braking, power steering...

! Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key.

Special cases: STOP mode not available

STOP mode is not invoked when:

- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start using the key,
- the electric parking brake is applied or being applied,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is active,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system.

ECO In this case, the **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes for a few seconds then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

IX

Going into engine START mode

ECO The **"ECO"** warning lamp goes off and the engine starts with the **electronic gearbox system**:

- gear lever in position **A** or **M**, release the brake pedal,
- or gear lever in position **N** and the brake pedal released, move the gear lever to position **A** or **M**,
- or engage reverse gear.

Special cases: START invoked automatically

START mode is invoked automatically when:

- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 7 mph (11 km/h) with the electronic gearbox system,
- the electric parking brake is being applied,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed for control of a system.

ECO In this case the **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Deactivation



At any time, press the **"ECO OFF"** switch to deactivate the system.

This is confirmed by the switch warning lamp coming on accompanied by a message in the screen.

If the system has been deactivated in STOP mode, the engine restarts immediately.

Reactivation

Press the **"ECO OFF"** switch again.

The system is active again; this is confirmed by the switch warning lamp going off and a message in the screen.

The system is reactivated automatically at every new start using the key.

Operating fault



In the event of a fault with the system, the **"ECO OFF"** switch warning lamp flashes then comes on continuously.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a fault in STOP mode, the vehicle may stall: all the instrument panel warning lamps come on. It is then necessary to switch off the ignition and start the engine again using the key.

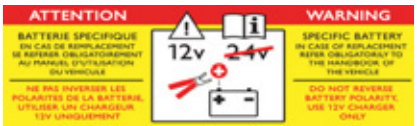
Maintenance

! Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from automatic operation of START mode.

This system requires a 12 V battery with a special specification and technology (reference numbers available from CITROËN dealers).

Fitting a battery not listed by CITROËN introduces the risk of malfunction of the system.

To charge the battery, use a 12 V charger and observe the polarity.



! The Stop & Start system makes use of advanced technology. For any work on the system go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment required, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

AUTOMATIC GEARBOX



Automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation, enhanced by the sport and snow programmes, or manual gear changing.

Four driving modes are provided:

- **automatic** operation for electronic control of the gears by the gearbox,
- the **SPORT** programme for a more dynamic driving style,
- the **SNOW** programme to improve driving when the grip is poor,
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

Mode selection



- ☞ automatic mode: gear lever in position **D**,
- ☞ sequential mode: gear lever in position **M**,
- ☞ **SPORT** mode: gear lever in position **D** and button **A** pressed,
- ☞ **SNOW** mode: gear lever in position **D** and button **B** pressed.

Displays in the instrument panel



The position of the gear lever and the driving mode are displayed in the instrument panel dial **C**.

A position grille associated with the gear lever allows you to view the selected position.

! For safety:

- position **P** can be disengaged only if you press the brake pedal,
- when a door is opened, an audible signal is heard if the gear lever is not in position **P**,
- always make sure that the gear lever is in position **P** before you leave your vehicle.

If the gearbox is in position **P** but the position of the gear lever is different, reposition the gear lever on **P** so that you can start the vehicle.

IX

Moving off

- To start the engine, the gear lever must be in position **P** or **N**.
- Operate the starter.
- When the engine is running, place the gear lever on **R**, **D** or **M** as required.
- Check, in the instrument panel, the position engaged.
- Release the brake pedal and accelerate.
- To avoid a possible difference between the position of the gear lever and the actual position of the gearbox, always exit from position **P** with the ignition on and brake pedal applied.

Otherwise, when the ignition is on or the engine is running:

- reposition the gear lever in position **P**,
- put your foot on the brake pedal and then select the gear you want.

Park

P This position of the gear lever is used to prevent the vehicle from moving when you are stationary.

- To select position **P,** move the gear lever back to the highest position (towards **R**), then push it forwards and then to the left.
- To exit position **P**, move the gear lever to the right and then to the position you want.
- Only engage this position when the vehicle is completely stationary. In this position, the front wheels are locked. Make sure that the gear lever is correctly positioned.

Reverse gear

R Only engage this position when the vehicle is stationary. To prevent snatching, do not accelerate too soon after selection.

Neutral

N Never select position **N** if the vehicle is moving.

! Never select positions **P** or **R** if the vehicle is not stationary.

If, while the vehicle is moving, position **N** is engaged inadvertently, allow the engine to idle before engaging position **D** or **M**.

IX

Automatic operation



☞ Move the gear lever to position **D**.

The gearbox constantly selects the gear that is best suited to the following parameters:

- driving style,
- road profile
- vehicle load.

The gearbox operates without requiring any intervention on your part.

For certain manoeuvres (for example overtaking), you can obtain maximum acceleration by pressing the accelerator pedal hard down past the point of resistance, which then produces an automatic change down to a lower gear.

When braking, the gearbox may change down automatically in order to provide effective engine braking.

If you lift your foot off the accelerator abruptly, the gearbox will not engage a higher gear.

Manual operation



Position of the gear lever for manual gear changing.

☞ Move the gear lever to position **M**.

☞ Push the gear lever towards the "**+**" sign to change up a gear.

☞ Pull the gear lever towards the "**-**" sign to change down a gear.

- If the vehicle stops or reduces speed (for example when approaching a stop sign), the gearbox changes down automatically to first gear.
- In sequential mode, it is not necessary to release the accelerator during gear changes.
- A request to change gear is accepted only if the engine speed permits it.
- The **SPORT** and **SNOW** modes do not operate in sequential mode.

IX

SPORT and SNOW programmes



These two special programmes supplement the automatic operation in very particular conditions of use.

SPORT programme "S"

S

☞ With the gear lever in position **D** and the engine running, press button **A**.

The gearbox automatically favours a dynamic driving style.

S appears in the instrument panel.

SNOW programme "❄"

☞ With the gear lever in position **D** and the engine running, press button **B**.

The gearbox adapts to driving on slippery roads.

This programme makes moving off easier and improves traction in conditions of poor grip.

❄ appears in the instrument panel.

Return to automatic operation

☞ At any time, press the button selected again to exit from the programme engaged and return to auto-adaptive mode.

! A strong snatch may be felt when selecting **R** for reverse gear.

In the event of a fault, the gearbox is blocked in one gear; do not exceed a speed of 62 mph (100 km/h).

Do not turn off the engine while the gear selector is in position **D** or **R**.

Never press the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously. Braking and acceleration should be done with the right foot only. Pressing both pedals simultaneously may damage the gearbox.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

IX

FIXED CENTRED CONTROLS STEERING WHEEL





1	Rotation	- Scroll the various pages of information on the instrument panel screen. - Move through the various menus on the instrument panel screen. - Increase/decrease values.
	Short press	- Open the menu on the instrument panel screen (only when stationary). - Select and confirm information.
	Long press	Trip computer zero reset (if the trip computer page is displayed).
2	Short press	- Cancel the current operation. - Return to the previous screen on the instrument panel screen.
	Long press	Return to the initial page on the instrument panel screen.
3	Short press	Increase the speed in steps of 1 mph (1 km/h) / storing the speed.
	Maintained press	Increase the speed in steps of 5 mph (5 km/h).
4	Short press	Decrease the speed in steps of 1 mph (1 km/h) / storing the speed.
	Maintained press	Decrease the speed in steps of 5 mph (5 km/h).
5	Short press	Suspend or resume cruise control/speed limiter (depending on the mode selected).
6	Short press	Select cruise control or speed limiter mode (the cycle on this button will always begin with selection of the speed limiter).
7	Short press	Deactivate cruise control/speed limiter.
8	Short press	- Pick up an incoming call. - Hang up the current call. - Open the telephone short-cut menu. - Confirm on the list and the telephone menu.
	Long press	Refuse an incoming call.
9	Short press / Long press	Horn.
10	Short press	Activate/deactivate Black Panel mode (night driving).
11	Short press	Activate the voice command.
	Long press	Navigation instruction repeat.





12	Rotation	- Radio source: Scroll the pre-set stations. - CD/MP3 CD/CD changer/jukebox source: Scroll the CDs or directories. - On the multifunction screen menus: Movement and increase/decrease.
	Short press	- On the multifunction screen menus: confirm. - Open the short-cut menus (depending on the multifunction screen page).
	Long press	Open the multifunction screen main menu.
13	Short press	Cancel the current operation and return to the previous page on the multifunction screen. When an incoming telephone call is received: Refuse the call.
	Long press	Return to the initial page on the multifunction screen.
14	Short press	Access to the multifunction screen general menu.
15	Short press / Maintained press	Volume increase.
16	Short press / Maintained press	Volume decrease.
17	Short press	- First press: mute. - Second press: restore sound.
18	Short press	- Radio source: Automatic search of higher frequencies. - CD/MP3 CD/CD changer/jukebox source: Search for the next track.
	Maintained press	- CD/MP3 CD/CD changer/jukebox source: Fast forward play.
19	Short press	- Radio source: Automatic search of lower frequencies. - CD/MP3 CD/CD changer/jukebox source: Search for the previous track.
	Maintained press	CD/MP3 CD/CD changer/jukebox source: Fast backwards.
20	Short press	- Radio source: display the list of radio stations available. - CD/MP3 CD and CD changer source: display the list of CD tracks and directories. - Jukebox source: display the list of albums.
	Long press	Update the list of radio stations.
21	Short press / Long press	Horn.
22	Short press	MODE: selection of the type of information presented on the multifunction screen.

SPEED LIMITER

System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.

When the limit speed is reached, the accelerator pedal no longer has any effect.

The speed limiter is switched on manually: a speed of at least 20 mph (approx. 30 km/h) must be programmed.

The speed limiter can in no way replace respect for speed limits or vigilance and responsibility on the part of the driver.

Steering mounted controls



The speed limiter switches are located on the left-hand side of the steering wheel.

Displays in the instrument panel



The speed limiter information is displayed in zone **A** of the instrument panel.

Programming

☞ Press on button **4** to select speed limiter mode **"LIMIT"**.

The selection is confirmed by the display of the function in zone **A** of the instrument panel.



When the function is selected, the last memorised speed and the information **"PAUSE"** are displayed.

With the engine running, you can adjust the memorised maximum speed, displayed in zone **A**, by pressing on:

☞ Button **1** to increase the memorised maximum speed.

☞ Button **2** to decrease the memorised maximum speed.

Successive presses will modify the maximum speed in steps of 1 mph and a continuous press in steps of 5 mph.

Activation



☞ Press on button **3** when the desired maximum speed is displayed.

The information **"ON"** then appears in zone **A**.



Suspension / Resumption

☞ Press on button **3**.

This action causes the information **"PAUSE"** to appear in zone **A** of the instrument panel.



This action does not cancel the memorised maximum speed which remains displayed in zone **A** of the instrument panel.



Overriding the programmed speed

The accelerator pedal has an end-of-travel switch. In order to exceed the memorised maximum speed at any time, you can press the pedal all the way down. While the speed is being exceeded, the speed displayed in zone **A** will flash. You have only to release the accelerator pedal to return below the maximum speed, to restore the function.

The speed will also flash if the speed limiter is not able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed (e.g. on a steep descent or under excessive acceleration).

To reactivate the speed limiter, release the accelerator to slow to a speed lower than the programmed speed.

Return to normal driving

☞ Either press on button **5**.

☞ Or select the speed limiter function.

☞ Or stop the engine.

Operating fault

If there is a fault, a message is displayed accompanied by an audible signal and illumination of the **SERVICE** warning lamp.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a steep descent or under excessive acceleration, the speed limiter (which does not act on the brakes) may not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

Use of a floor mat other than that recommended by CITROËN may affect the normal operation of the accelerator pedal and hamper the operation of the speed limiter.

Floor mats approved by CITROËN are fitted with a 3rd fixing located in the pedal area to avoid any risk of interference with the pedals.

CRUISE CONTROL

System which automatically maintains the vehicle speed programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control is switched on manually: the vehicle speed must be at least 25 mph (40 km/h) and you must be in at least:

- 4th gear for manual gearboxes,
- 2nd gear for automatic gearboxes.

Steering mounted controls



The cruise control switches are located on the left-hand side of the steering wheel.

Displays in the instrument panel



The programmed information is grouped together in zone **A** of the instrument panel.

Programming

☞ Press button **4** to select cruise control mode "**CRUISE**".



The selection is confirmed by the display of the function in zone **A** of the instrument panel.

When the function is selected, **no cruising speed has yet been memorised.**

Once the desired speed has been reached using the accelerator, press button **1** or button **2**. The cruising speed is then memorised and cruise control is activated. The cruising speed is displayed in zone **A** of the instrument panel, and **"ON"** is displayed.



You can then release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle will automatically keep to the speed chosen.

The vehicle speed may vary slightly from that memorised.

If during cruise control the system cannot keep to the cruise speed (e.g. on a steep descent), then the speed flashes. If necessary, brake to curb your speed.

Adjustment of the memorised speed while cruise control is in operation

You can adjust the memorised speed, displayed in zone **A**, by pressing:

- Button **1** to increase the speed.
- Button **2** to reduce the speed.

Successive presses will modify the cruise speed in steps of 1 mph and a continuous press in steps of 5 mph.

Overriding the programmed speed

While cruise control is in operation, it is always possible to go above the programmed speed simply by pressing the accelerator pedal (for example to overtake another vehicle).

The speed displayed in zone **A** flashes.

You only have to release the accelerator pedal to return to the programmed speed.

Suspension / Resumption

- ☞ Either by pressing the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.
- ☞ Or by pressing button **3**.
- ☞ Or by the ESP or ASR systems being active.

For vehicles with a manual gearbox, cruise control is deactivated if the gear lever is in neutral.



"PAUSE" will be displayed in zone **A** of the instrument panel.

These actions do not cancel the cruising speed which remains displayed on the instrument panel.

Reactivation

- **By recalling the memorised speed**

  After deactivation, press button **3**. Your vehicle automatically returns to the memorised cruising speed. The memorised speed and **"ON"** are displayed in zone **A**.

  If the memorised cruising speed is higher than the current speed, the vehicle will accelerate strongly to reach the current speed.

- **By selecting the current speed**

  Press button **1** or **2** once the desired speed has been reached.

  The new speed and **"ON"** will appear in zone **A**.

Return to normal driving

- ☞ Either press on button **5**.
- ☞ Or select the cruise control function.
- ☞ Or stop the engine.

The speed that was chosen is no longer memorised.

Operating fault

If there is a fault, a message is displayed accompanied by an audible signal and illumination of the **SERVICE** warning lamp.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Cruise control must only be used where the traffic conditions permit driving at a constant speed.

Do not use it on congested roads or when the weather or the road conditions are poor.

The driver must remain attentive and in complete control of the vehicle.

You are recommended to keep your feet within range of the pedals.

IX

LANE DEPARTURE WARNING SYSTEM

System which detects the involuntary crossing of longitudinal traffic lane markings on the ground (solid or broken line).

Sensors, fitted below the front bumper, trigger a warning if the vehicle drifts over a lane marking (speed higher than 50 mph (80 km/h)).

This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.

The lane departure warning system cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance and responsibility on the part of the driver.

Activation

☞ Press this button, the indicator lamp comes on.

Deactivation

☞ Press this button again, the indicator lamp goes off.

The status of the system remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.



Detection

You are warned by the vibration of the driver's seat cushion:

- on the right-hand side, if the marking on the ground has been crossed on the right,
- on the left-hand side, if the marking on the ground has been crossed on the left.

No warning is transmitted while the direction indicator is active and for approximately 20 seconds after the direction indicator is switched off.

A warning may be transmitted if a direction marking (e.g. arrow) or non-standard marking (e.g. graffiti) is crossed.

Operating fault

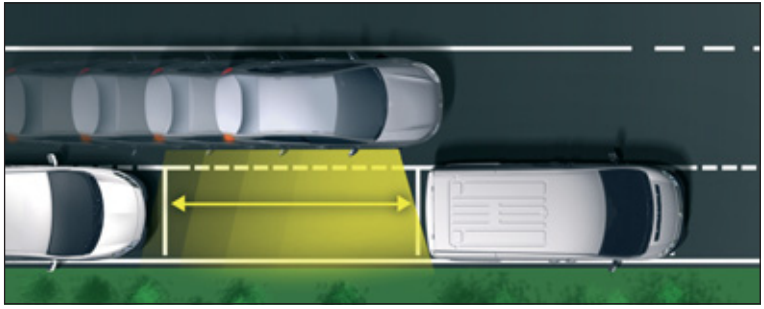
In the event of a malfunction, the service warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The detection may be impeded:

- if the sensors are dirty (mud, snow...),
- if the markings on the ground are worn,
- if there is little contrast between the markings on the ground and the road surface.

PARKING SPACE SENSOR



System which measures the parking space available between two vehicles or obstacles. It measures the size of the space and gives you information on:

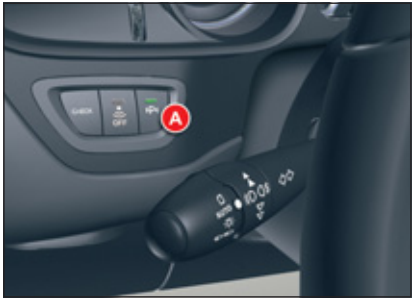
- the possibility of fitting into a free space, depending on the dimensions of your vehicle and the distances necessary for your manoeuvring,
- the level of difficulty of the manoeuvre to be performed.

The system does not measure spaces which are clearly much smaller or larger than the size of the vehicle.

Displays in the instrument panel

The parking space sensor function warning lamp can have three different states:

- **off:** the function is not selected,
- **on fixed:** the function is selected but the conditions for measuring are not yet met (direction indicator not operating, speed too high) or the measurement is terminated.
- **flashing:** measurement is in progress or the message is being displayed.



You can select the "parking space sensor" function by pressing button **A**. The fixed illumination of the warning lamp indicates that the function is selected.

During the measurement, the message "Measurement in progress - Vmax 20 km/h (12 mph)" is displayed in the instrument panel screen.

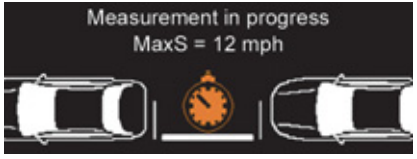
IX

Operation

You have identified a parking space:

- ☞ Press button **A** to select the function.
- ☞ Activate the direction indicator on the side where the space is to be measured.
- ☞ During measurement, go forward the length of the space, at a speed less than 12 mph (approx. 20 km/h), to prepare for your manoeuvre.

The system then measures the size of the space.



- ☞ The system informs you of the level of difficulty of the manoeuvre via a message in the instrument panel screen accompanied by an audible signal.
- ☞ Depending on the message issued by the system, you may or may not be able to perform the manoeuvre.

The function displays the following types of message:



Parking YES



Parking DIFFICULT



Parking NO

The function deselects itself automatically:

- when you engage reverse gear,
- when you switch off the ignition,
- if measurement is not requested,
- within five minutes of selection of the function,
- if the vehicle speed exceeds the threshold of 45 mph (approx. 70 km/h) for one minute.

If the lateral distance between your vehicle and the parking space is too large, the system may not be able to measure the space.

The function remains available after each measurement and thus can measure more than one space during your search.

In bad weather conditions or in winter, make sure that the sensors are not covered by dirt, or by ice or snow.

The parking space sensor function deactivates the front parking sensors during space measurement when you are in forward gear.

If there is a fault, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

IX

VISUAL AND AUDIBLE FRONT AND/OR REAR PARKING SENSORS

System consisting of proximity sensors, installed in the front and/or rear bumper.

It detects any obstacle (person, vehicle, tree, barrier...) located in front of or behind the vehicle, however, it will not be able to detect obstacles located immediately below the bumper.

An object, such as a stake, a roadworks cone or any other similar object may be detected at the start of the manoeuvre but may no longer be detected when the vehicle moves nearer to it.





The parking sensors are **switched on**:

- by engaging reverse gear,
- at a speed below 6 mph (10 km/h) in forward gear.

This is accompanied by an audible signal and/or displaying of the vehicle on the multifunction screen.

The proximity information is indicated by:

- an audible signal which becomes more rapid as the vehicle approaches the obstacle,
- a diagram on the multifunction display, with blocks which move closer to the vehicle.

The obstacle is located in relation to the emission of the audible signal by the speakers; front or rear and right or left.

When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous and/or the "Danger" symbol appears, depending on the multifunction screen version.

The parking sensors are **switched off**:

- when you exit reverse gear,
- when the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h) in forward gear,
- when the vehicle has been stationary for more than three seconds in forward gear.

The parking sensors system cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance and responsibility on the part of the driver.

Deactivation

☞ Press button **A**, the warning lamp comes on, the system is fully deactivated.

The system will be deactivated automatically when a trailer is being towed or when a bicycle carrier is fitted (vehicle fitted with a towbar or bicycle carrier recommended by CITROËN).

Reactivation



☞ Press button **A** again, the warning lamp switches off, the system is reactivated.

In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.

When the speed of the vehicle is below about 6 mph (10 km/h), some sources of noise (motorcycle, lorry, pneumatic drill, ...) may trigger the audible parking sensor signals.

REVERSING CAMERA (TOURER)



A reversing camera is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

The colour image is provided in the navigation screen.



The space between the blue lines represents the width of your vehicle except for the door mirrors.



The blue lines represent the general direction of the vehicle.

The red lines represent a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper. The audible signal becomes continuous from this limit.

The green lines represent distances of about 1 and 2 metres beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.

Clean the reversing camera regularly using a sponge and a soft cloth.

IX

"HYDRACTIVE III +" ELECTRONIC SUSPENSION



The suspension automatically and instantly adjusts to different driving styles and to the profile of the road, providing the best compromise between occupant comfort and vehicle road holding.

The system alternates between soft and firm suspension settings, maximising comfort at the same time as constantly ensuring the highest level of safety. It also automatically corrects ride height, according to the vehicle load and driving conditions.

In addition, the "Hydractive III +" system allows you to choose between two modes of suspension.

A change of suspension mode can be made either when the vehicle is moving or when stationary, by pressing button **A**.

Display in the instrument panel

The suspension mode selected is displayed in the instrument panel screen.

Normal mode



This mode favours soft damping for maximum comfort.

If the speed authorised for a particular position is exceeded, the vehicle reverts automatically to the normal road position.

SPORT mode



This mode favours dynamic driving.

The warning lamp on button **A** comes on in addition to the message in the instrument panel screen.

SPORT mode is retained when you switch off the engine.

Vehicle positions



Position changes may only be made when the engine is running.

The adjustable ground clearance meets all types of situation. Apart from a few specific situations, the vehicle should be in the Normal position.

☞ Press once on one of the adjustment controls.

The change in position is indicated by a message on the instrument panel screen.



IX



High position

Changing a wheel (not possible if speed > 6mph (10 km/h)).



Mid-high position

For increased ground clearance (not possible if speed > 25 mph (40 km/h)).

For use on difficult roads when travelling at reduced speed, as well as on car park ramps.



Normal position

If the speed authorised for a particular position is exceeded, the vehicle reverts automatically to the normal position.



Low position

To facilitate loading or unloading the vehicle.

For workshop inspections.

Not to be used in normal driving (not possible if speed > 6mph (10 km/h)).

Request not granted



The instrument panel screen temporarily displays a message indicating that this position is not authorised.

The vehicle remains in the authorised position and the instrument panel screen indicates this position to you.

Automatic variation of ground clearance

- If your speed exceeds 70 mph (approx. 110 km/h), on a good road surface, ground clearance is lowered. The vehicle returns to its normal position if the road surface deteriorates or if your speed is lower than 55 mph (approx. 90 km/h).
- At low or medium speed, if the road surface is poor, ground clearance is increased. The vehicle returns to its normal position as soon as conditions allow.
- On switching off the ignition, the ground clearance is reduced to the parking position

For your safety if you are operating underneath the vehicle, you must support the vehicle with axle stands.

IX

TOTAL & CITROËN

Partners in performance and protecting the environment

Innovation in the search for performance

For over 40 year, the TOTAL Research and Development departments have developed for CITROËN, lubricants to match the latest technical innovations on CITROËN vehicles, both for competition and for everyday motoring.

For you, this is an assurance that you will obtain of the best performance for your engine.

Optimum protection for your engine

By having your CITROËN vehicle serviced with TOTAL lubricants, you are contributing towards improving the life and performances of your engine, while also protecting the environment.



X

CITROËN

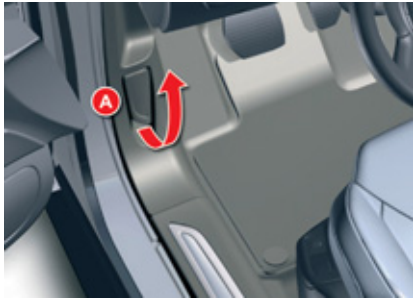
CITROËN prefers TOTAL

TOTAL

BONNET

Opening

! Before doing anything under the bonnet, switch off the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.



- ☞ Open the left hand front door.
- ☞ Pull the interior bonnet release lever **A**, located at the bottom of the door frame.



- ☞ At the front of the bonnet, lift the safety catch **B** and raise the bonnet.



- ☞ Unclip the stay **C** from its housing and pivot it to insert it in the notch **D** indicated by a yellow arrow.
- ☞ Fix the stay in the notch to hold the bonnet open.

When the engine is hot, handle the safety catch and bonnet stay with care (risk of burns).

The location of the interior release lever prevents opening of the bonnet while the left hand front door is closed.

This operation must only be carried out when the vehicle is stationary.

Avoid opening the bonnet in strong winds.

Closing

- ☞ Take the stay out of the support notch.
- ☞ Clip the stay in its housing.
- ☞ Lower the bonnet then slam it firmly at the end of its travel.
- ☞ Pull on the bonnet to check that it is fully closed.

BLEEDING THE DIESEL FUEL FILTER

Protective cover



Removing the cover

HDi 140 engine

- ☞ Remove the protective cover by first unclipping at **3**, then **1** and **4**.
- ☞ Unclip at **2** by pulling towards you, then lift up.

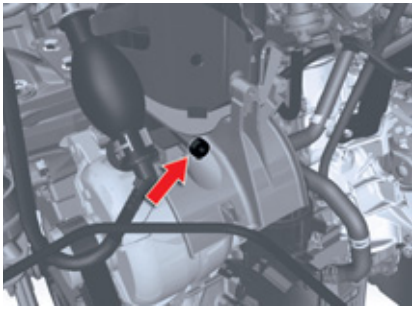
HDi 115, HDi 160 and V6 HDi 240 engines

- ☞ Pull the protective cover upwards to remove it.

Refitting

- ☞ Firstly clip in at **2**.
- ☞ Lower and centre the cover.
- ☞ Clip in at **3** and **4**, pushing vertically and gently from the rear.
- ☞ Clip in at **1** pushing vertically.

Bleeding water from the fuel filter



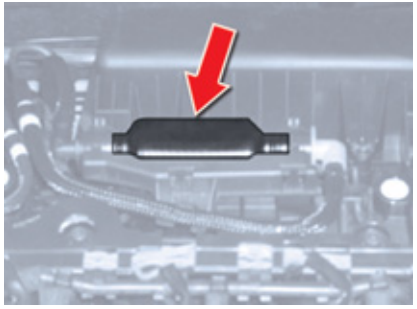
Bleed regularly (at each oil change).

To bleed the water, slacken the bleed screw or the water in diesel fuel sensor, located at the base of the filter.

Continue until all the water has flowed out.

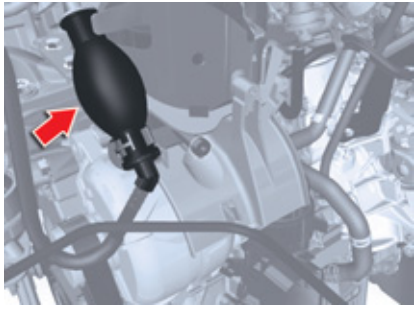
Then tighten the bleed screw or the water detection sensor.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL (DIESEL)



HDi 115 engine

☞ Unclip the protective cover to gain access to the priming pump.



HDi 140 and HDi 160 engines

☞ Unclip the protective cover to gain access to the priming pump.

Priming the fuel system

In the event of running out of fuel:

☞ after filling (minimum 5 litres) and removing the protective cover, operate the manual priming pump, until some resistance is felt,

☞ operate the starter motor while depressing the accelerator pedal slightly until the engine starts.

If the engine fails to start at the first attempt, wait fifteen seconds before trying again.

If the engine fails to start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again and then try to start the engine.

When the engine is idling, accelerate slightly to complete the bleeding of the circuit.

V6 HDi 240 engine with electric pump

In the event of running out of fuel:

☞ after adding fuel, turn the ignition key to position **M**, wait for a few seconds,

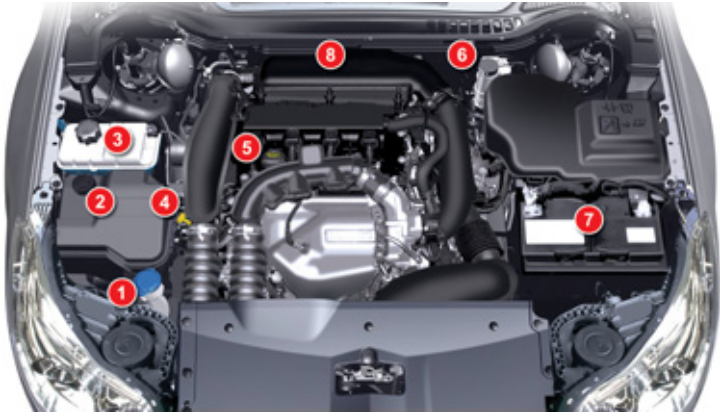
☞ operate the starter motor until the engine starts.

If the engine fails to start after several attempts, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

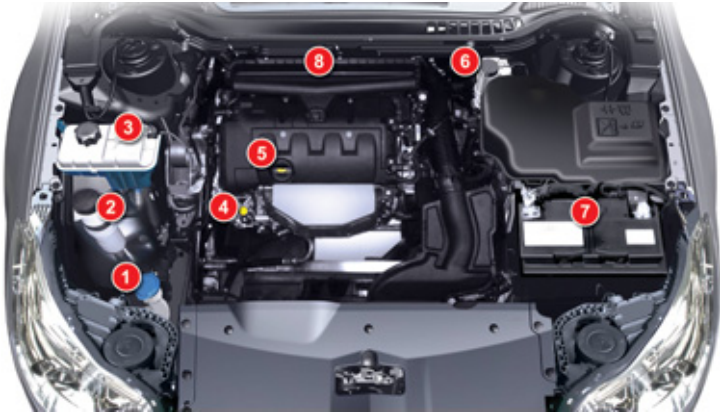
! HDi engines make use of advanced technology.

For any work on your vehicle, contact a qualified workshop that has the skills and equipment required, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

X



1.6i THP

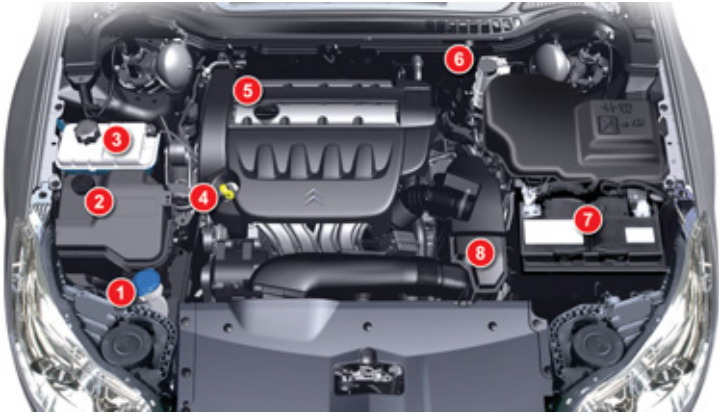


1.6i VTi

PETROL ENGINES

The various caps and covers allow access for checking fluid levels and for replacing certain components.

1. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
2. Power steering fluid reservoir or power steering and suspension fluid reservoir.
3. Engine coolant header tank.
4. Engine oil dipstick.
5. Engine oil filler cap.
6. Brake fluid reservoir.
7. Battery.
8. Air filter.

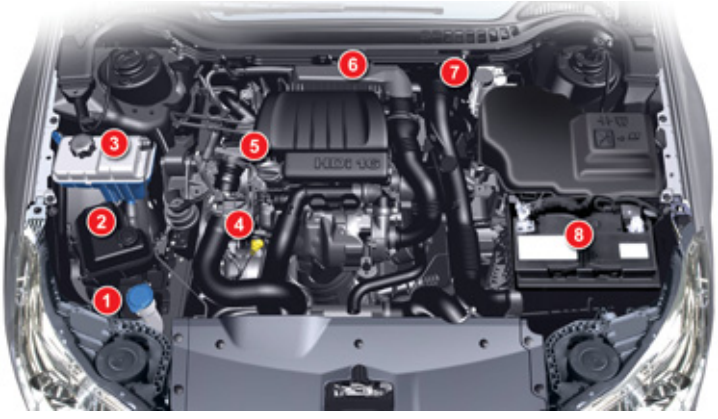


2.0i 16V

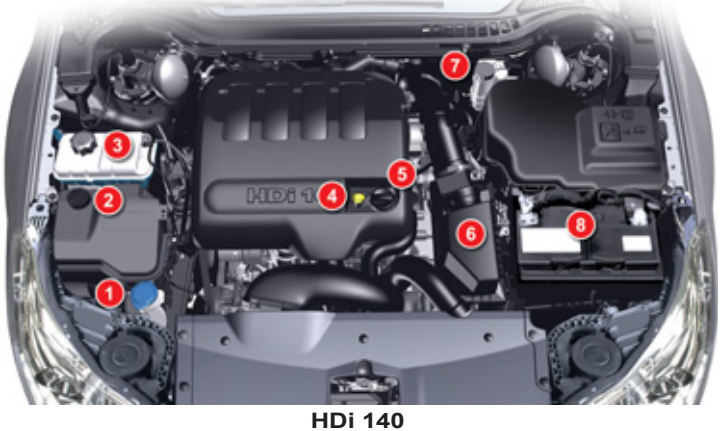
1. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
2. Power steering fluid reservoir or power steering and suspension fluid reservoir.
3. Engine coolant header tank.
4. Engine oil dipstick.
5. Engine oil filler cap.
6. Brake fluid reservoir.
7. Battery.
8. Air filter.

X

! Vehicles fitted with the **2.0i 16v** engine may be fitted with metal spring suspension. In this case, a different power steering fluid reservoir is fitted.



HDi 115 / e-HDi 115



HDi 140

DIESEL ENGINES

The various caps and covers allow access for checking fluid levels, for replacing certain components and for priming the fuel system.

1. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
2. Power steering fluid reservoir or power steering and suspension fluid reservoir, depending on equipment.
3. Engine coolant header tank.
4. Engine oil dipstick.
5. Engine oil filler cap.
6. Air filter.
7. Brake fluid reservoir.
8. Battery.

! As the Diesel fuel system operates under high pressure, any work on the fuel system is prohibited.

Vehicles fitted with the **HDi 140** engine may be fitted with metal spring suspension. In this case, a different power steering fluid reservoir is fitted.

X



HDi 160



HDi 200

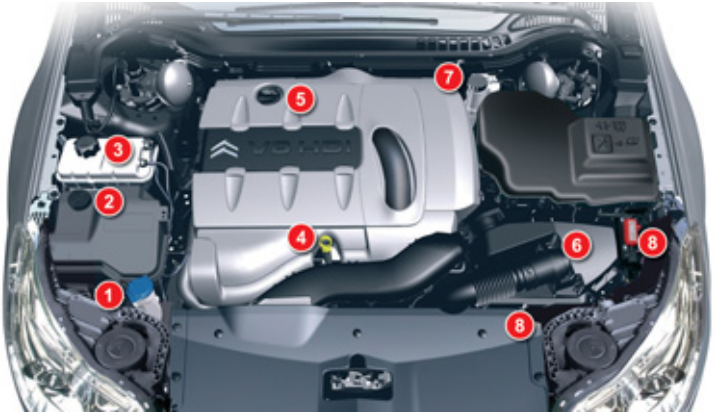
HDi 160 - HDi 200 engines (with particle emissions filter)

1. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
2. Power steering and suspension fluid reservoir.
3. Engine coolant header tank.
4. Engine oil dipstick.
5. Engine oil filler cap.
6. Air filter.
7. Brake fluid reservoir.
8. Battery.

! As the Diesel fuel system operates under high pressure:

- All work on the fuel system is prohibited.
- HDi engines make use of advanced technology.

All maintenance and repairs require special qualifications which only a CITROËN dealer can guarantee.



V6 HDi 240

V6 HDi 240 engine (with particle emissions filter)

1. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
2. Power steering and suspension fluid reservoir.
3. Engine coolant header tank.
4. Engine oil dipstick.
5. Engine oil filler cap.
6. Air filter.
7. Brake fluid reservoir.
8. "+" and "-" terminals for emergency starting with a slave battery.

! As the Diesel fuel system operates under high pressure:

- All work on the fuel system is prohibited.
- HDi engines make use of advanced technology.

All maintenance and repairs require special qualifications which only a CITROËN dealer can guarantee.

X

CHECKING LEVELS

If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Check all of these levels regularly and top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated.

Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns).

Oil level

The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator on the instrument panel, or using the dipstick.

This manual check will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). CITROËN recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3 000 miles (5 000 kms).

After topping up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping up.

Dipstick



There are two marks on the dipstick:

A = max; never exceed this level,

B = min; top up the oil level via the oil filler cap, using the correct grade of oil for your engine.

Engine oil change

Refer to the servicing booklet for details of the interval for this operation.

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emission control system, the use of additives in the engine oil is prohibited.

Oil specification

The oil must be the correct grade for your engine and conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Brake fluid level

The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

Changing the fluid

Refer to the servicing booklet for details of the interval for this operation.

Fluid specification

The brake fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations and meet the DOT4 standard.

Power steering or power steering and suspension fluid level

For topping up, it is necessary to go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Coolant level



The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.

When the engine is warm, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan. This can operate with the ignition off.

For vehicles fitted with a particle emissions filter, the cooling fan may continue to run after stopping the vehicle, even if the engine is cold.

In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

To avoid any risk of scalding, unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop. When the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up the level.

Changing the coolant

The coolant does not have to be changed.

Fluid specification

The coolant must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Screenwash and headlamp wash fluid



In the case of vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, the low fluid level is indicated by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

Top up the reservoir when you next stop the vehicle.

Fluid specification

For optimum cleaning and to avoid freezing, this fluid must not be topped up with or replaced with plain water.

Reservoir capacity (depending on version).

- screenwash fluid: approximately 3.5 litres,
- screenwash and headlamp wash fluid: approximately 6.15 litres.

Diesel additive level (Diesel engine with particle emission filter)

SERVICE

The additive reservoir low level is indicated by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible warning and a message in the multifunction screen.

Topping up

This additive must be topped up by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Used products

Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.

Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.

Take used oil to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop (France) or to an authorised waste disposal site.

X

CHECKS

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the servicing booklet and according to your engine.

Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

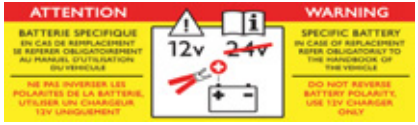
12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance.

However, check that the terminals are clean and correctly tightened, particularly in summer and winter.

When carrying out work on the battery, refer to the "Practical information" section for details of the precautions to be taken before disconnecting the battery and following its reconnection.



The presence of this label, in particular with the Stop & Start system, indicates the use of a specific 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specification. The involvement of a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop is essential when replacing or disconnecting the battery.

Air filter and passenger compartment filter



Refer to the servicing booklet for details of the replacement intervals for these components.

Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace them twice as often if necessary**.

A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Oil filter



Replace the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Refer to the servicing booklet for details of the replacement interval for this component.

Particle filter system (Diesel)

Complementary to the catalytic converter, this filter makes an active contribution to the preservation of air quality by trapping unburnt pollutant particles. Black exhaust fumes are thus no longer emitted.

After prolonged idling or driving at very low speeds, you may occasionally notice water vapour being emitted from the exhaust when accelerating. This is of no consequence to the running of the vehicle or to the environment.

If there is risk of blockage, a message appears in the instrument panel screen, accompanied by an audible signal and illumination of the service warning lamp.

This alert tells you that the particle filter is approaching saturation (in conditions of urban driving of exceptionally long duration: low speeds, traffic jams etc.)

To regenerate the filter, it is advised to drive as soon as possible, when traffic conditions permit, at a speed of 40 mph (around 60 km/h) or more for at least five minutes (until the alert message disappears).

If this alert persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

X

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the servicing booklet for the details of the level checking interval for this component.

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the servicing booklet for details of the level checking interval for this component.

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Parking brake



If a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be checked, even between two services.

This system must be checked by a CITROËN dealer.

! Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specifications.

Do not use a dry cloth with an abrasive product for the maintenance of aluminium parts; use a sponge and soapy water.

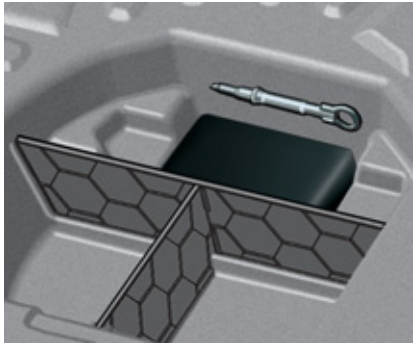
In order to optimise the operation of units as important as the braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products.

To avoid damaging the electrical units, the use of a high pressure washer in the engine compartment is strictly **prohibited**.

X

TEMPORARY PUNCTURE REPAIR KIT

Complete system consisting of a compressor and a sealant cartridge which permits the **temporary repair** of the tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.



The kit is located in the boot under the floor.

This repair kit is available from CITROËN dealers or a qualified workshop.

It is designed to repair holes of a maximum diameter of 6 mm, located exclusively on the tyre tread or shoulder. Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated the tyre.

XI

Using the kit

- Switch off the ignition.
- Affix the speed limitation sticker to the vehicle's steering wheel to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.



- Check that the switch **A** is in position **"0"**.
- Connect the pipe of the cartridge **1** to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.



- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.



☞ Switch on the compressor by moving the switch **A** to position **"1"** until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars.

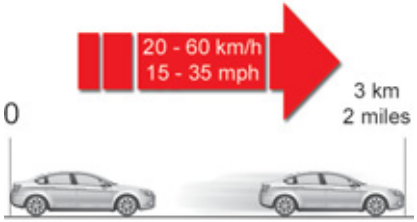


! If this pressure has not been reached after approximately five to ten minutes, the tyre cannot be repaired; contact a CITROËN dealer to have your vehicle repaired.

☞ Remove the compressor and unclip and store the cartridge in a sealed bag to avoid staining your vehicle with traces of fluid.

☞ Drive immediately for approximately two miles (three kilometres), at reduced speed (between 15 and 35 mph [20 and 60 km/h]), to plug the puncture.

☞ Stop to check the repair and the pressure.

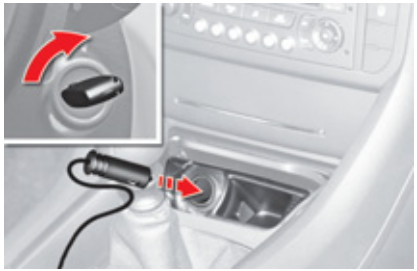


☞ Connect the compressor pipe directly to the valve of the repaired wheel.

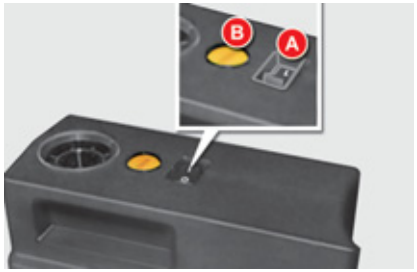


XI

- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket again.
- Start the vehicle again and leave the engine running.



- Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **A** in position **"1"**; to deflate: switch **A** in position **"0"** and press button **B**), in accordance with the vehicle's tyre pressure label (located on the door aperture on the left-hand side), then remember to check that the leak has been plugged correctly (no further loss of pressure after several miles [kilometres]).
- Remove the compressor, then store the whole kit.
- Drive at reduced speed (50 mph [80 km/h] max) limiting the distance travelled to approximately 120 miles (200 km).
- Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to have the tyre repaired or replaced by a technician.



Take care as sealant cartridge contains ethylene-glycol. This product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes. Keep it out of reach of children.

The expiry date of the sealant is indicated on the base of the cartridge.

The cartridge is designed for a single use; even if only partly used, it must be replaced.

After use, do not discard the cartridge into the environment, take it to a CITROËN dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.

Do not forget to obtain a new cartridge, available from CITROËN dealers or a qualified workshop.

If the vehicle is fitted with tyre underinflation detection, the tyre underinflation warning lamp will remain on after the wheel has been repaired until the system is reinitialised by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

CHANGING A WHEEL

Access to the tools



The tools are to be found in a protective holder inside the spare wheel.

☞ Pull back the retaining strap for access.

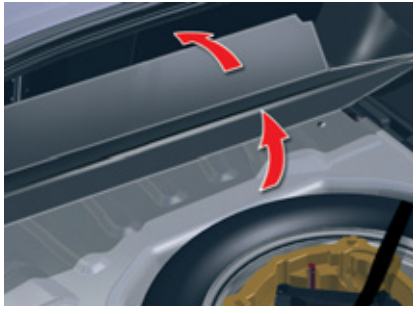


List of tools

All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and may vary according to equipment. Do not use them for any other purpose.

1. Wheelbrace
2. Jack
3. Tool for the removal/refitting of bolt protectors
4. Towing eye
5. Moveable chock

Access to the spare wheel



To remove the spare wheel

- ☞ Saloon: raise the boot floor and fold in two.
- ☞ Tourer: raise the boot floor and hook it using the retractable handle. Secure the hook to the top part of the boot.
- ☞ Detach the strap then push the wheel forwards so as to be able to lift it.



To reposition the spare wheel

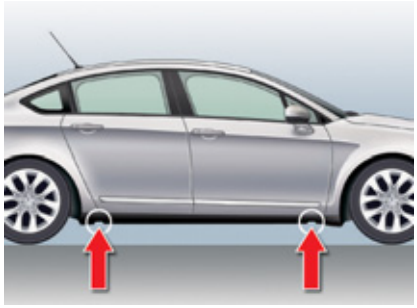
- ☞ Position the spare wheel flat in the boot, then pull it towards you.
- ☞ Next place the toolbox inside the wheel, then secure the assembly with the strap.
- ☞ Release the boot floor to return it to its initial position.

! The tyre pressures are indicated on the label located on the driver's side centre door pillar. Tyre pressures are given for different vehicle loading conditions.

Removing a wheel



- Park the vehicle on stable, firm ground that is not slippery. apply the parking brake.
- If your vehicle is equipped with "Hydractive III+" suspension, with the engine running at idle, adjust the ground clearance to its maximum height.
- Switch off the ignition and engage first gear or reverse gear depending on any slope (for a vehicle with automatic gearbox, select position **P**).
- If your vehicle is fitted with "Hydractive III+" suspension, position the chock, whichever direction the gradient may be in, in front of the front wheel diametrically opposite to the one to be replaced.



- Position the jack at one of the four jacking-points provided on the underbody close to the wheels, then use the wheelbrace to unwind the jack until it reaches the ground.



- Remove the protector from each bolt using tool **3**.
- Slacken the wheel bolts.
- Continue to extend the jack until the wheel is a few centimetres off the ground.
- Undo the bolts, remove the wheel.

! Before positioning the jack:

- Always adjust the vehicle's ground clearance to the "maximum height" position and retain this adjustment for as long as the jack is under the vehicle (do not use the hydraulic adjustments),
- Immobilise your vehicle on horizontal, stable and non-slippery ground,
- Ensure that any passengers have left the vehicle and are in a safe place.

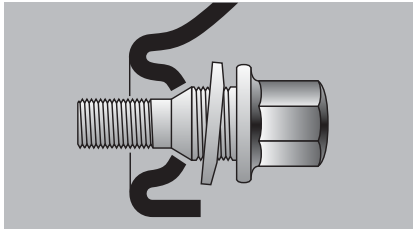
Never get underneath the vehicle if it is supported only by the jack.

The jack and all of the tools are specific to your vehicle. Do not use them for any other applications.

Have the original wheel repaired and refitted as soon as possible.

XI

Wheel for temporary use



Your vehicle may be fitted with a spare wheel which is different to those on the vehicle. When fitting the spare wheel, it is normal to notice that the wheel bolt washers do not come into contact with the wheel rim. The spare wheel is secured by the conical tapering of the wheel bolt's shaft.

When refitting the original wheel, ensure that the wheel bolt contact surfaces are clean and in good condition.

Fitting a wheel

- ☞ Fit the wheel on the hub, using the centring guide. Make sure that the contact surface between the hub and the wheel is clean.
- ☞ Screw in the bolts but do not fully tighten them.
- ☞ Lower the jack and remove it.
- ☞ Tighten the wheel bolts, using the wheelbrace.
- ☞ Refit the protectors on the bolts.
- ☞ Return the ground clearance to the normal position.
- ☞ Ensure the tyre pressure is correct and have the balancing checked.

Under-inflation detection

These wheels have tyre pressure sensors. Repairs must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Security bolts (according to version)

Each wheel is equipped with one security bolt.

To remove it:

- ☞ Remove the protector using tool **3**.
- ☞ Use the security socket with the wheelbrace.

! If your vehicle is fitted with a spare wheel of a different size to those on the vehicle, you must not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) whilst using the spare wheel.

The wheel bolts are specific to the type of wheel.

If the type of wheel is changed, check with your CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop that the wheel bolts are compatible with the new wheels.

Take care to note down the code number engraved on the head of the security bolt socket. This will enable you to obtain a replacement security bolt socket from your dealer.

CHANGING A BULB

The headlamps are fitted with polycarbonate glass with a protective coating:

- **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
- use a sponge and soapy water,
- when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals,
- do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use lint-free cloths.

Changing a bulb should only be done after the headlamp has been switched off for a few minutes (risk of serious burns).

It is imperative to use only anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs in order not to damage the headlamp.

Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

Front lamps

Model with Xenon headlamps (D1S)



1. **Dual-function Xenon headlamps (dipped/main):** D1S
2. **Cornering lighting:** HP19
3. **Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (LEDs)**

For the maintenance of the front lamps and changing HP19 and D1S bulbs and LED lamps, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Risk of electrocution

Xenon bulbs must be replaced by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

You are advised to change both D1S bulbs at the same time, if one of them has failed.

Model with halogen headlamps



1. **Main beams:** H1
2. **Dipped beams:** H7
3. **Directional lighting:** H7
4. **Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (LEDs)**

For the maintenance of the front lamps and changing LED lamps, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Main beam headlamps



- ☞ Remove the protective cap **A**.
- ☞ Disengage the retaining spring.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and replace it, paying attention to the direction of fitting.
- ☞ Refit the retaining spring.
- ☞ Refit the protective cap **A**.

Dipped beam headlamps



- Remove the protective cap **B**.
- Disconnect the connector by pressing it between the thumb and index finger.
- Free the bulb from its two metal clamps.
- Take out the bulb.
- Replace the bulb, exerting a slight axial force.
- Refit the connector, until it is all the way in.
- Refit the protective cap **B**.

Directional lamp



- Remove the protective cap **C**.
- Disconnect the connector by pressing it between the thumb and index finger.
- Free the bulb from its two metal clamps.
- Take out the bulb.
- Replace the bulb, exerting a slight axial force.
- Refit the connector, until it is all the way in.
- Refit the protective cap **C**.

Direction indicators



- Remove the fixing screw of cover **A** using a torx tool, tip the cover over and remove.
- Remove the fixing screw of lamp **B** using a torx tool and pull the headlamp unit to remove it from the bumper.
- Detach the bulb **C** by pressing on bars **1** and **2**.
- Disconnect the connector (pull whilst pressing on the grey tongue using a flat screwdriver).
- Replace the bulb.
- Refit the connector (push the grey tongue in well).
- Refit the headlamp unit in the bumper.
- Refit the lamp screws.
- Position the cover using its guides and refit the screws.

Bulbs: HP24W

Front foglamps



- Remove the fixing screw of cover **A** using a torx tool, tip the cover over and remove.
- Remove the fixing screw of lamp **B** using a torx tool and pull the headlamp unit to remove it from the bumper.
- Disconnect the connector **D**.



- Remove the bulb by performing a quarter of a turn.
- Replace the bulb.
- Refit the connector **D**.
- Refit the headlamp unit in the bumper.
- Refit the lamp screws.
- Position the cover using its guides and refit the screws.

Bulbs: H8

XI

Side repeaters



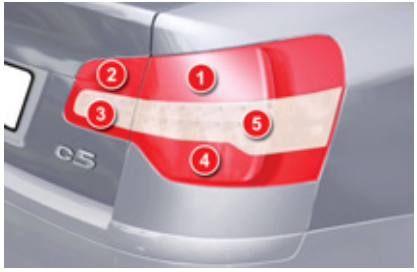
The side repeater is sealed.

If the bulb is faulty, replace the side repeater.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When refitting, take care not to trap the electrical cables.

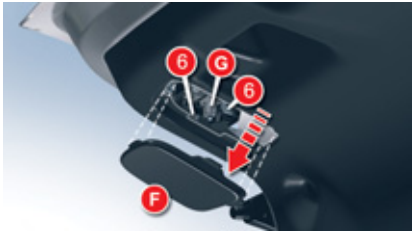
Rear lamps (Saloon)



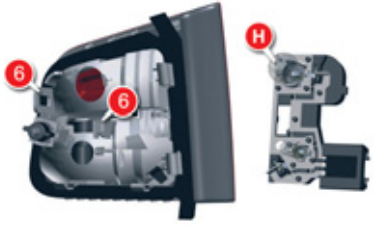
Identify the failed bulb.

1. **Brake lamps and sidelamps:** P 21 W / 5 W
2. **Sidelamps:** R 5 W
3. **Reversing lamps:** H 21 W
4. **Foglamps:** H 21 W
5. **Direction indicators:** PY 21 W

Boot-mounted lamps



- Open the boot.
- Using a flat screwdriver, remove the 3 clips which fix the trim in the lamp area.
- Partially remove the trim **F**.
- Disconnect the connector **G**.



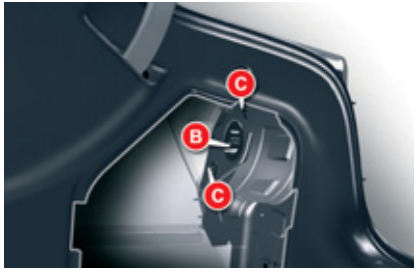
- Unclip the bulb holder **H**.
- Replace the bulb.
- Refit the bulb holder **H**.
- Check that the bulb holder **H** is secured correctly by the two clips **6**.
- Refit the connector **G**.
- Replace and fix the trim **F** with its clips.

Wing-mounted lamps



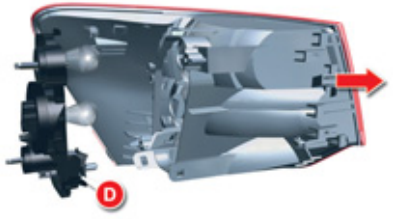


☞ Remove the lateral boot trim flap **A**. To do so, pull it towards the inside of the boot, then pull it upwards.





☞ Disconnect connector **B**.
☞ Unscrew the 2 fixings **C**.
☞ Remove the lamp from its housing.

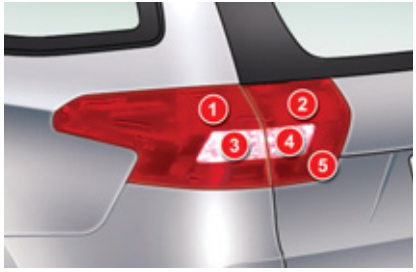


☞ Detach the bulb holder **D**.
☞ Replace the bulb.
☞ Refit the bulb holder **D**.
☞ Place the lamp in its housing.
☞ Screw in the 2 fixings **C**.
☞ Refit connector **B**.
☞ Refit the trim **A**.

You can use the wheelbrace to screw or unscrew the fixings **C**.

XI

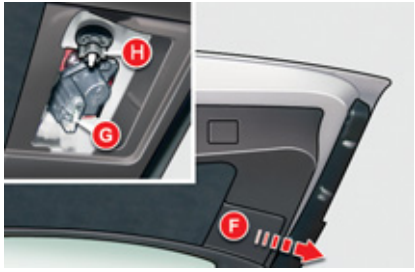
Rear lamps (Tourer)



Identify the failed bulb.

1. **Brake lamps and sidelamps:** P 21 W / 5 W
2. **Sidelamps:** R 5 W
3. **Reversing lamps:** H 21 W
4. **Foglamps:** H 21 W
5. **Direction indicators:** PY 21 W

Boot-mounted lamps



- Open the boot.
- Using a flat screwdriver, remove the plastic cover **F**.
- Disconnect the connector **G**.
- Unscrew the fixing nut **H**.
- Disengage the lamp from its housing.

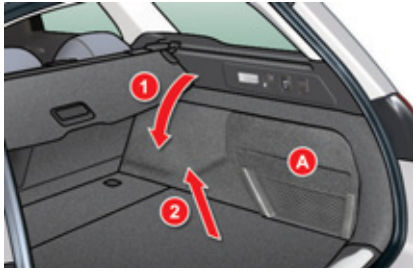


- Unclip the bulb holder **J**.
- Replace the bulb.
- Refit the bulb holder **J** ensuring that it is correctly clipped in place.
- Position the lamp in its housing.
- Tighten the fixing nut **H**.
- Refit the connector **G**.
- Position and clip in place the plastic cover **F**.

You can use the wheelbrace to screw or unscrew the fixing nut **H**.

XI

Wing-mounted lamps

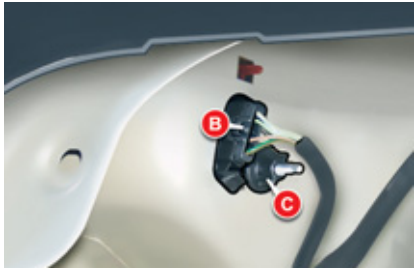




Remove the lateral boot trim **A**.

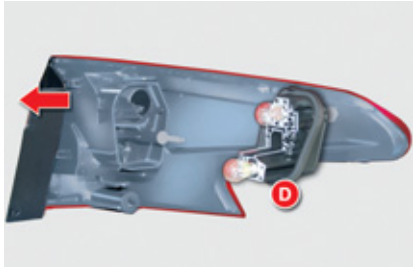
To do so:

- Pull it towards towards the inside of the boot.
- Pull it upwards.





- Disconnect the connector **B**.
- Unscrew the fixing nut **C**.
- Remove the lamp from its housing.

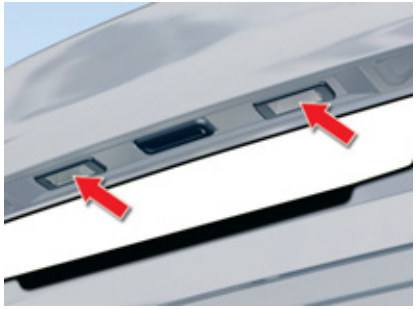


- Detach the bulb holder **D**.
- Replace the faulty bulb.
- Refit the bulb holder **D**.
- Place the lamp in its housing.
- Screw in the fixing nut **C**.
- Refit the connector **B**.
- Refit the trim **A**.

You can use the wheelbrace to screw or unscrew the fixing nut **C**.

XI

Number plate lamps (W5W)



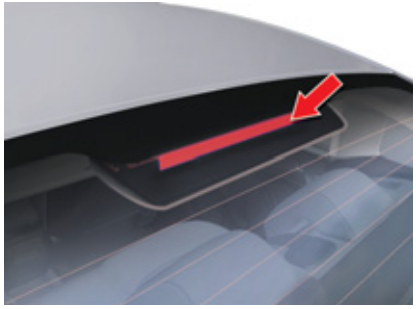


- Insert a thin screwdriver into one of the external holes of the lens.
- Push it outwards to unclip it.



- Remove the lens.
- Change the faulty bulb.

Third brake lamp (LEDs)



For the replacement of this type of LED lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Interior lamps



Roof lamps

☞ Unclip the transparent cover of the roof lamp to reach the bulb.

Bulb: W 5 W

Map reading lamp

☞ Detach the cover.

☞ If necessary, detach the partition of the affected map reading lamp.

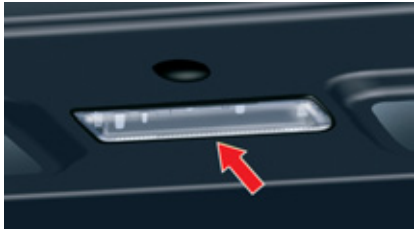
Rear reading lamps (Tourer)



☞ Detach the cover of the reading lamp to access the bulb.

Bulb: W 5 W

Boot lamp



☞ Detach the cover and use a W 5W bulb.

Pavement lighting



☞ Detach the cover and use a W 5W bulb.

Floor lighting



☞ Detach the cover and use a W 5W bulb.

Glove box



☞ Detach the cover and use a W 5W bulb.

XI

CHANGING A FUSE

Operating procedure for replacing a failed fuse with a new fuse to rectify a failure of the corresponding function.

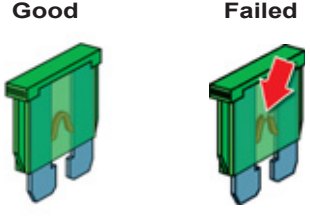
The 2 fuseboxes are located below the dashboard and under the bonnet.

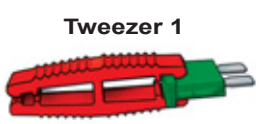
Replacing a fuse

Before replacing a fuse, you should ascertain the cause of the fault and have it remedied. The numbers of the fuses are indicated on the fuse-box.

Replace the fuse that has failed with one of the same rating (same colour).

Use the special tweezer **1** placed on the flap close to the fuseboxes.





Fuses under the dashboard

Access to the fuses

☞ fully open the storage box then pull firmly on it horizontally,

☞ remove the trim by pulling sharply on the bottom.

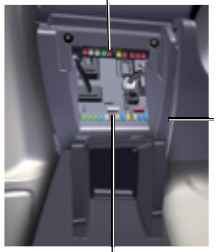
When refitting the storage box, observe the following advice:

- With the storage box horizontal, refit the bottom ensuring that the lower cut-outs are in line with the pins.
- Give a sharp push to the front.
- Close the storage box, ensuring that the springs located behind pass over the top.

Fusebox **A**





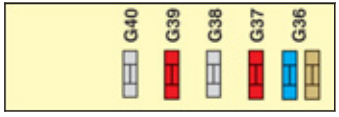




Tweezer **1**



Fusebox **C**



Fusebox **B**

XI

FUSEBOX A

Table of fuses

Fuse N°	Rating	Function
G29	-	Not used
G30	5 A	Heated door mirrors
G31	5 A	Rain and sunshine sensor
G32	5 A	Seat belt not fastened warning lamps
G33	5 A	Electrochromatic mirrors
G34	20 A	Sunroof (saloon)
G35	5 A	Passenger door lighting - passenger door mirror adjustment
G36	30 A	Electric tailgate (Tourer)
G37	20 A	Heated front seats
G38	30 A	Driver's electric seat
G39	30 A	Passenger's electric seat - HiFi amplifier
G40	3 A	Trailer relay unit supply

FUSEBOX B

Fuse N°	Rating	Function
G36	15 A	6 speed automatic gearbox
	5 A	4 speed automatic gearbox
G37	10 A	Daytime running lamps - Diagnostic socket
G38	3 A	ESP
G39	10 A	Hydraulic suspension
G40	3 A	STOP switch

FUSEBOX C

Fuse N°	Rating	Function
F1	15 A	Rear screen wipe (Tourer)
F2	30 A	Locking and deadlocking relay
F3	5 A	Airbags
F4	10 A	Automatic gearbox - additional heater unit (Diesel) - electrochromatic rear view mirrors
F5	30 A	Front window - sun roof - passenger door lighting - passenger door mirror adjustment
F6	30 A	Rear window
F7	5 A	Vanity mirror lighting - Glove box lighting - interior lamps - torch (Tourer)
F8	20 A	Radio - CD changer - Steering mounted controls - Screen - Deflation detection - Electric boot ECU
F9	30 A	Cigarette lighter - front 12 V socket
F10	15 A	Alarm - Steering mounted controls, lighting, signalling and wiper stalks
F11	15 A	Low current anti-theft switch
F12	15 A	Driver's electric seat - instrument panel - seat belt not fastened warning lamps - air conditioning controls
F13	5 A	Engine relay unit - Hydraulic suspension pump cut-off relay - airbag ECU supply
F14	15 A	Rain and sunshine sensor - parking sensors- passenger's electric seat - trailer relay unit - HIFI amplifier ECU - Bluetooth system - Lane Departure Warning System
F15	30 A	Locking and deadlocking relay
F17	40 A	Heated rear screen - heated door mirrors
FSH	SHUNT	PARK SHUNT

Fuses under the bonnet



Access to the fuses

- ☞ Undo each screw by a 1/4 turn.
- ☞ Change the fuse.

After a repair, take care to close the cover correctly.

Any repairs on the MAXI fuses (that give additional protection) located in the fuseboxes, must be left to a CITROËN or a qualified workshop.

Table of fuses

Fuse N°	Rating	Function
F1	20 A	Engine control unit
F2	15 A	Horn
F3	10 A	Screen wash pump
F4	10 A	Headlamp wash pump
F5	15 A	Engine actuators
F6	10 A	Air flow meter - Directional headlamps - Diagnostic socket
F7	10 A	Automatic gearbox lever lock - Power steering
F8	25 A	Starter motor
F9	10 A	Clutch switch - Stop switch
F10	30 A	Engine actuators
F11	40 A	Air conditioning blower
F12	30 A	Wipers
F13	40 A	BSI supply (ignition on)
F14	30 A	-
F15	10 A	Right-hand main beam
F16	10 A	Left-hand main beam
F17	15 A	Right-hand dipped beam
F18	15 A	Left-hand dipped beam
F19	15 A	Engine actuators
F20	10 A	Engine actuators
F21	5 A	Engine actuators

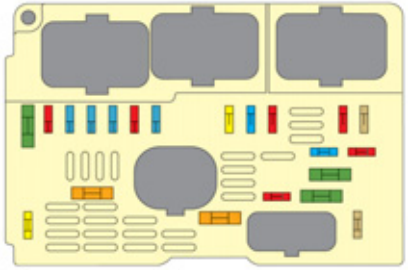


Table of fuses

Fuse N°	Rating	Function
F6	25 A	Rear 12 V socket (max power: 100 W)
F7	15 A	Foglamps
F8	20 A	Additional burner (Diesel)
F9	30 A	Electric parking brake

On completion, close the cover carefully.

If the cover is not correctly positioned or not properly closed, this could cause serious problems on your vehicle. For the same reason, take care not to spill any liquid in the fusebox.

! Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with either standard or optional equipment.

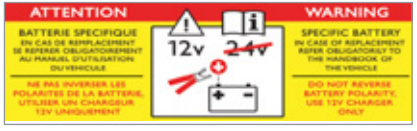
Before installing electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, consult a dealer CITROËN or a qualified workshop.

CITROËN declines all responsibility for the consequences and costs that are caused by faults or repairs on your vehicle resulting from the installation of accessories that are not supplied and/or not recommended by CITROËN and not installed in conformity with its requirements, particularly when the total consumption of additional devices exceeds 10 milliamperes.

The Maxi fuses give additional protection to electrical systems. any work on them must be carried out by a dealer CITROËN or a qualified workshop.

BATTERY

Procedure for charging your battery when it is flat or for starting the engine using another battery.

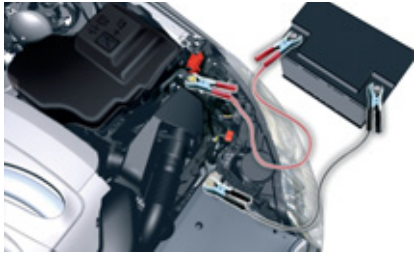


The presence of this label, in particular with the Stop & Start system, indicates the use of a 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specification; the involvement of a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop is essential when replacing or disconnecting the battery.

Failure to observe this recommendation may cause premature wear of the battery.

After refitting the battery by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, the Stop & Start system will only be active after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the climatic conditions and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Access to the battery

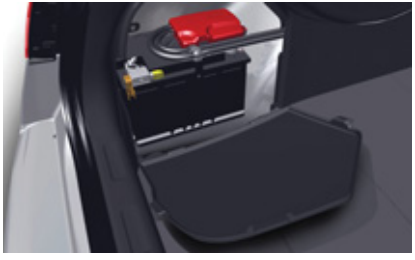


The battery is located under the bonnet.

For access to it:

- open the bonnet using the interior release lever, then the exterior safety catch,
- secure the bonnet stay,
- remove the plastic cover to gain access to the two terminals,
- unclip the fusebox to remove the battery, if necessary.

V6 HDi engine

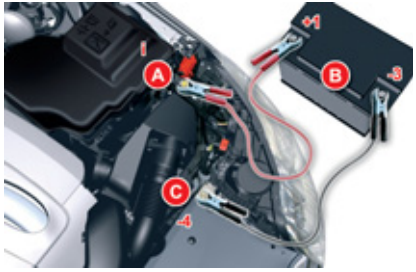


The battery is located in the boot under the left-hand wing trim.

For access to it:

- open the boot,
- open the flap and remove the battery.

Starting using another battery



- Lift the pins to remove the front left headlamp cover (V6 HDi engine).
- Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of the flat battery **A**, then to the positive terminal (+) of the slave battery **B**.
- Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of the slave battery **B**.

  V6 HDi engine: the positive terminal (-) is located under the red cover.
- Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.
- Operate the starter, let the engine run.
- Wait until the engine returns to idle and disconnect the cables.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

Do not disconnect the battery to charge it.

- Disconnect the battery from the vehicle.
- Follow the instructions for use provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
- Reconnect starting with the negative terminal (-).
- Check that the terminals and connectors are clean. If they are covered with sulphate (whitish or greenish deposit), remove them and clean them.

The batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.

Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to an authorised collection point.

It is advisable to disconnect the battery if the vehicle is to be left unused for more than one month.

Do not disconnect the terminals while the engine is running.

Do not charge the batteries without disconnecting the terminals first.

Do not touch the clips during the operation.

Do not lean over the batteries.

Disconnect the cables in the reverse order to connection, ensuring that they do not touch.

Before disconnecting the battery

Wait 2 minutes after switching off the ignition before disconnecting the battery.

Close the windows and the doors before disconnecting the battery.

Following reconnection of the battery

Following reconnection of the battery, switch on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting to permit initialisation of the electronic systems. However, if slight malfunctions remain following this operation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the corresponding section, you must yourself reinitialise:

- the remote control key,
- the glass panoramic roof blind,
- the GPS satellite navigation system.

ENERGY ECONOMY MODE

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.

After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped headlamps, courtesy lights, etc. for a maximum combined duration of thirty minutes.

This period may be significantly reduced if the battery charge is low.

Switching to economy mode

Once the thirty minutes are over, a message appears on the multi-function screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

If the telephone is being used at this time:

- it will be maintained for five minutes with hands-free kit of your Audio system,
- it will be maintained for ten minutes with your eMyWay.

Exiting economy mode

These functions are reactivated automatically next time the vehicle is driven.

☞ In order to resume the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run for a few minutes.

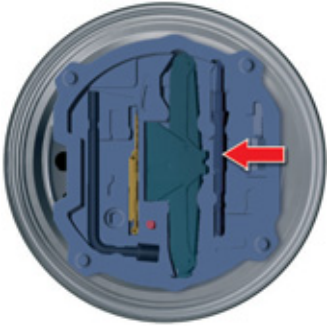
The time available will then be double the duration for which the engine was left running. However, this time will always be between five and thirty minutes.

! A flat battery prevents the engine from starting (refer to the corresponding section).

TOWING THE VEHICLE

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable towing eye.

Access to the tools



The towing eye is installed in the jack box placed in the spare wheel.

For access to it:

☞ open the boot,

☞ raise the floor,

☞ remove the towing eye from the jack box.

XI

Towing your vehicle



- On the front bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the top.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Attach the towing bar.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.
- Place the gear lever in neutral (position **N** on the automatic gearbox).

Failure to observe this special condition could result in damage to certain braking components and the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

In the event of a fault or malfunction with the electronic gearbox system, the vehicle may be immobilised with a gear engaged. In this case the front of the vehicle must be lifted for towing.

Towing another vehicle



- On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing:
  - on the right (Saloon),
  - at the bottom (Tourer).
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Attach the towing bar.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.

When towing with all four wheels on the ground, always use a towing bar.

When towing with only two wheels on the ground, always use professional lifting equipment.

When towing with the engine off, there is no longer any braking or steering assistance.

XI

TOWING A TRAILER

Towbar suitable for the attachment of a trailer or installation of a bicycle carrier, with additional lighting and signalling.



Your vehicle is primarily designed for transporting people and luggage, but it may also be used for towing a trailer.

We recommend the use of genuine CITROËN towbars and their harnesses that have been tested and approved from the design stage of your vehicle, and that the fitting of the towbar is entrusted to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

XI

! If the towbar is not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, it is imperative that it is fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and the driver must take particular care.

Driving advice

Distribution of loads

☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. Above 1 000 metres, the maximum towed load must be reduced by 10 % for every 1 000 metres of altitude.

Refer to the "Technical Data" section for details of the weights and towed loads which apply to your vehicle.

Side wind

☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to side wind.

Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.

As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towed load on a long incline depends on the gradient and the ambient temperature.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.

☞ If the warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance.

To avoid overheating of the brakes on a long mountain type of descent, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Tyres

☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer.

The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically if a genuine CITROËN towbar is used.

Blanking cover



When towing, you must remove the blanking cover in the front bumper as well as the bonnet seal if fitted

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for this.

ROOF BARS

The design of your vehicle requires the use of roof bars that are tested and approved by CITROËN, for your safety and to avoid damage to the roof and tailgate.

Regardless of the type of loading equipment to be transported on the roof (bicycle carrier, ski carrier...), it is imperative that you add transverse roof bars. Any securing or lashing to components other than the roof bars is strictly prohibited.

Recommendations

- ☞ Distribute your load evenly, avoiding overloading on one side.
- ☞ Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
- ☞ Anchor the load securely and draw attention to it if any part of it is overhanging.
- ☞ Drive gently, as the vehicle will be more liable to the effects of side winds (vehicle stability may be altered).
- ☞ Remove the roof bars as soon as they are no longer needed.

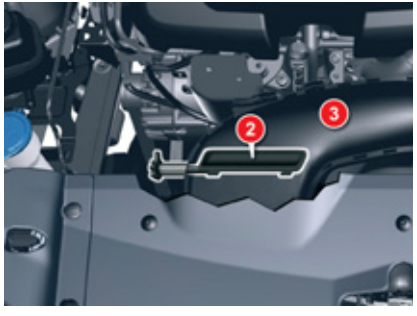
! Maximum load that can be distributed on the roof bars (for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm; except bicycle carrier): 80 kg.

If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt your speed to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the roof.

Please refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations concerning the transportation of objects which are longer than the vehicle.

VERY COLD PROTECTION*

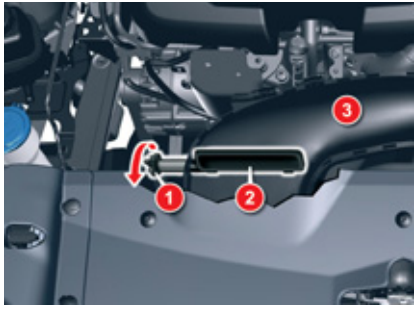
Adjustable device which prevents the intake of snow particles, which could obstruct the air filter.



HDi Diesel 160 PEF engine

Normal position

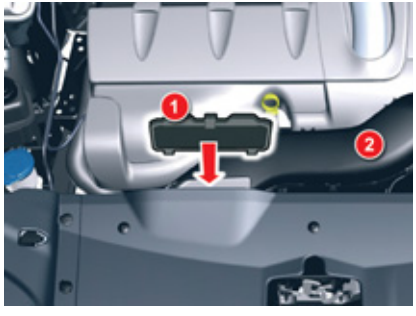
The flap **2** is in a horizontal position in the air duct **3**.



Snow position

☞ Push and rotate the knob **1** by 90 ° in the direction of the arrow in order to position the flap **2** in a vertical position in the air duct **3**.

To return to the normal position, push the knob **1** then rotate in the opposite direction.



V6 HDi Diesel 240 PEF engine

Snow position

Slide the deflector **1** into the air duct **2** and clip in.

It is essential to remove the very cold protection:
- When the ambient temperature exceeds 10 °C.
- When driving at speeds of over 75 mph (approximately 120 km/h).

XI

* According to country.

COLD CLIMATE SCREEN*

Removeable screen which prevents the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan.

Fitting

- ☞ Offer up the 2 sections of the snow guard to the upper and lower sections of the front bumper.
- ☞ Press on the surround to clip in one by one the fixing clips.

Remove

- ☞ Using a screwdriver, lift it up to detach each fixing clip one by one.

It is essential to remove the snow guard:
- When the ambient temperature exceeds 10 °C,
- When towing,
- When driving at speeds of over 75 mph (approximately 120 km/h).



Before fitting



After fitting

* According to country.

Matt paint

If you vehicle is finished with a clear matt lacquer, please observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging the paintwork by the use of an inappropriate cleaning procedures.

These recommendations are also valid for alloy road wheels finished with clear matt lacquer.

Never clean the vehicle without water.

Never wash your vehicle in an automatic roller brush car wash.

Never polish the vehicle body, nor the alloy wheels. Doing this will make the paintwork shiny.

Do not use paint cleaners, abrasive products or paint polishing or preserving products (such as wax, for example) on the paintwork. These products are only suitable for bright finishes. Application of these products on vehicles with a matt finish will seriously damage the paint surface of the vehicle, giving rise to irreversible shiny or stained areas.

Never use a high pressure jet wash with a lance fitted with a brush, this may scratch the paintwork.

Never select a wash programme that finishes with a hot wax cycle.

We recommend the use of a high pressure jet wash, or at least a water hose with a high output.

We recommend that the vehicle be rinsed using de-ionised water.

Use only a microfibre cloth to dry the vehicle. It must be clean and used without heavy pressure.

Lightly wipe off any fuel stains present on the bodywork using a soft cloth, then leave to dry.

From the range of cleaning and maintenance products in the "TECHNATURE" range recommended and approved by CITROËN, use only the insect remover and car shampoo, which are the only products to be used on the bodywork.

The insect remover can also be used to remove minor marks (for example: finger marks...).

Always have paint repairs done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

ACCESSORIES

A wide range of accessories and genuine parts is available from the CITROËN dealer network.

These accessories and parts have been tested and approved for reliability and safety.

They are all adapted to your vehicle and benefit from CITROËN's recommendation and warranty.

"Comfort":

front and rear parking sensors, isotherm module, reading lamp, sun blinds, headrest-mounted coat hanger...

"Transport solutions":

boot liner, boot carpet, towbars, tow-bar wiring harness, transverse roof bars, bicycle carrier, ski carrier, roof boxes, boot dividers, boot net, boot organiser, sliding boot tray, platform on towbar, ...

"Style":

alloy wheels, rear spoiler, chromed mirror shells, door sill protectors, gear lever knobs...

"Security and safety":

anti-intrusion alarm, warning triangle and high visibility vest, breathalyzer, first aid kit, snow chains, non-skid covers, security wheel bolts, vehicle tracking system, child seats, fire extinguisher, caravan mirror, pet cage and seat belt, dog guard...

"Protection":

mats*, seat covers, mud flaps, bumper protectors, vehicle covers, door and boot sill protectors...

XI

* To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned and secured correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

"Multimedia":

Wi-Fi on board, 230V socket, audio systems, speakers, semi-integral navigation systems, portable navigation systems, hands-free kit, DVD player, USB Box, mapping update CD, driving aid, Hi-Fi module...

Installation of radio communication transmitters

Before installing any after-market radio communication transmitter, you can contact a CITROËN dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

Depending on the legislation in force in the country, it may be compulsory to have a high visibility safety vest, warning triangle and spare bulbs and fuses available in the vehicle.

! The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories which are not recommended by CITROËN may result in a failure of your vehicle's electronic system and excessive electrical consumption.

Please note this precaution. You are advised to contact a CITROËN representative to be shown the range of recommended equipment and accessories.

Engines and gearboxes				
Model codes: RD... RW...	**5FS-8/P**	**5FV-5FN/A**	**5FV-5FN/8**	**RFJF**
PETROL ENGINES	**1.6 litre VTi 120**	**1.6 litre THP 155**		**2 litre 16V**
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 598	1 598		1 997
Bore x stroke (mm)	77 x 85.8	77 x 85.8		85 x 88
EU standard maximum power (kW) / hp DIN	88 / 120	115* / 159		103 / 143
Maximum power engine speed (rpm)	6 000	6 000		6 000
EU standard maximum torque (Nm)	160	240		200
Maximum torque engine speed (rpm)	4 250	1 400		4 000
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded		Unleaded
Catalytic converter	Yes	Yes		Yes
GEARBOXES	Electronic gearbox system (6-speed)	Automatic (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	Automatic (4-speed)
OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)				
Engine (with filter replacement)	4.25	4.25	4.25	5

* In Russia, the maximum power is 110 kW and in Brazil, the maximum power is 120 kW.

Weights and towed loads (Saloon) in kg				
Petrol engines	**1.6 litre VTi 120**	**1.6 litre THP 155**		**2 litre 16V**
Gearboxes	**Electronic gearbox system**	**Automatic**	**Manual**	**Automatic**
Model codes: RD...	**5FS-8/P**	**5FV-5FN/A**	**5FV-5FN/8**	**RFJF**
- Unladen weight	1 425	1 515	1 471	1 583
- Kerb weight	1 500	1 590	1 546	1 658
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 018	2 026	2 065	2 090
- Gross train weight (GTW)	3 318	3 526	3 565	3 590
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit)				
on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 300	1 500	1 500	1 500
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within GTW limit)	1 570	1 710	1 730	1 720
- Unbraked trailer	750	750	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	64	69	70	69

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 100 km/h (approx. 60 mph) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

Weights and towed loads (Tourer) in kg				
Petrol engines	**1.6 litre VTi 120**	**1.6 litre THP 155**		**2 litre 16V**
Gearboxes	**Electronic gearbox system**	**Automatic**	**Manual**	**Automatic**
Model codes: RW...	**5FS-8/P**	**5FV-5FN/A**	**5FV-5FN/8**	**RFJF**
- Unladen weight	1 498	1 534	1 503	1 619
- Kerb weight	1 573	1 609	1 578	1 694
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 133	2 200	2 167	2 224
- Gross train weight (GTW)	3 433	3 700	3 667	3 724
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit)				
on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 300	1 500	1 500	1 500
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within GTW limit)	1 600	1 790	1 790	1 800
- Unbraked trailer	750	750	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	65	74	73	72

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 100 km/h (approx. 60 mph) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

Engines and gearboxes			
Model codes: RD... RW...	**9HL/8**	**9HR/8**	**RHR-RHF/H-8**
DIESEL ENGINES	**HDi 115**	**e-HDi 115**	**HDi 140**
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 560	1 560	1 997
Bore x stroke (mm)	75 x 88.3	75 x 88.3	85 x 88
EU standard maximum power (kW) / hp DIN	84 / 115	84 / 115	103* / 140
Maximum power engine speed (rpm)	3 600	3 600	4 000
EU standard maximum torque (Nm)	240	270	320
Maximum torque engine speed (rpm)	1 500	1 750	2 000
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Catalytic converter	Yes	Yes	Yes
Particle emission filter (PEF)	Yes	Yes	Yes
GEARBOXES	Manual (5-speed)	Electronic gearbox system (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)
OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)			
Engine (with filter replacement)	3.75		5.25

XII

* In Belgium, the maximum power is 100 kW.

Engines and gearboxes				
Model codes: RD... RW...	**RHH-RHE-RHD/8**	**RHH-RHE-RHD/A**	**4HL/A**	**X8Z/A**
DIESEL ENGINES	**HDi 160**		**HDi 200**	**V6 HDi 240**
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 997		2 179	2 993
Bore x stroke (mm)	85 x 88		85 x 96	84 x 90
EU standard maximum power (kW) / hp DIN	120* / 163		150 / 206	177 / 240
Maximum power engine speed (rpm)	3 750		3 500	3 800
EU standard maximum torque (Nm)	340		450	450
Maximum torque engine speed (rpm)	2 000		2 000	1 600
Fuel	Diesel		Diesel	Diesel
Catalytic converter	Yes		Yes	Yes
Particle emissions filter (PEF)	Yes		Yes	Yes
GEARBOXES	Manual (6-speed)	Automatic (6-speed)	Automatic (6-speed)	Automatic (6-speed)
OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)				
Engine (with filter replacement)	5.5		5.25	6.25

* In Russia, the maximum power is 100 kW.

Weights and towed loads (Saloon) in kg			
Diesel engines	**HDi 115**	**e-HDi 115**	**HDi 140**
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Electronic gearbox system**	**Manual**
Model codes: RD...	**9HL/8**	**9HR/8**	**RHR-RHF/H-8**
- Unladen weight	1 506	1 525	1 535
- Kerb weight	1 581	1 600	1 683
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 041	2 062	2 155
- Gross train weight (GTW)	3 141	3 162	3 755
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit)			
on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 100	1 100	1 600
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within GTW limit)	1 340	1 340	1 840
- Unbraked trailer	750	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	55	55	73

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 100 km/h (approx.) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

Weights and towed loads (Saloon) in kg				
Diesel engines	**HDi 160**		**HDi 200**	**V6 HDi 240**
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Automatic**	**Automatic**	**Automatic**
Model codes: RD...	**RHH-RHE-RHD/8**	**RHH-RHE-RHD/A**	**4HL/A**	**X8Z/A**
- Unladen weight	1 563	1 609	1 660	1 766
- Kerb weight	1 638	1 684	1 806	1 841
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 156	2 190	2 231	2 276
- Gross train weight (GTW)	3 656	3 290	3 831	3 676
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit)				
on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 500	1 100	1 600	1 400
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within GTW limit)	1 740	1 390	1 850	1 650
- Unbraked trailer	750	750	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	70	57	73	67

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 100 km/h (approx.) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

Weights and towed loads (Tourer) in kg			
Diesel engines	**HDi 115**	**e-HDi 115**	**HDi 140**
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Electronic gearbox system**	**Manual**
Model codes: RW...	**9HL/8**	**9HR/8**	**RHR-RHF/H-8**
- Unladen weight	1 538	1 540	1 655
- Kerb weight	1 613	1 615	1 730
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 153	2 174	2 276
- Gross train weight (GTW)	3 153	3 174	3 776
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit)			
on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 000	1 000	1 500
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within GTW limit)	1 300	1 300	1 800
- Unbraked trailer	750	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	53	54	72

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 100 km/h (approx. 60 mph) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

Weights and towed loads (Tourer) in kg				
Diesel engines	**HDi 160**		**HDi 200**	**V6 HDi 240**
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Automatic**	**Automatic**	**Automatic**
Model codes: RW...	**RHH-RHE-RHD/8**	**RHH-RHE-RHD/A**	**4HL/A**	**X8Z/A**
- Unladed weight	1 595	1 642	1 767	1 763
- Kerb weight	1 670	1 717	1 842	1 838
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 238	2 286	2 367	2 347
- Gross train weight (GTW)	3 638	3 286	3 967	3 647
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit)				
on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 400	1 000	1 600	1 300
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within GTW limit)	1 670	1 290	1 890	1 570
- Unbraked trailer	750	750	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	67	53	76	63

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 100 km/h (approx. 60 mph) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

Weights and towed loads (Tourer commercial versions) in kg		
Diesel engines	**HDi 115**	**HDi 140**
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Manual**
Model codes: RW...	**9HL0/U**	**RHF8/U**
- Unladen weight	1 486	1 585
- Kerb weight*	1 561	1 660
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)**	2 155	2 247
- Gross train weight (GTW)***	3 155	3 747
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient****	1 000	1 500
- Braked trailer (with load transfer within GTW limit)	X	X
- Unbraked trailer	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	53	72

* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + the driver (75kg).

** Exceeding the maximum weight on the rear axle when towing involves restricting the maximum speed to 80 km/h (approximately 50 mph) as defined by point 2.7 of the EU Directive.

*** Exceeding the gross vehicle weight when towing involves restricting the maximum speed to 80 km/h (approximately 50 mph) as defined by point 2.7 of the EU Directive.

**** Maximum braked trailer weight within the GTW limit; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

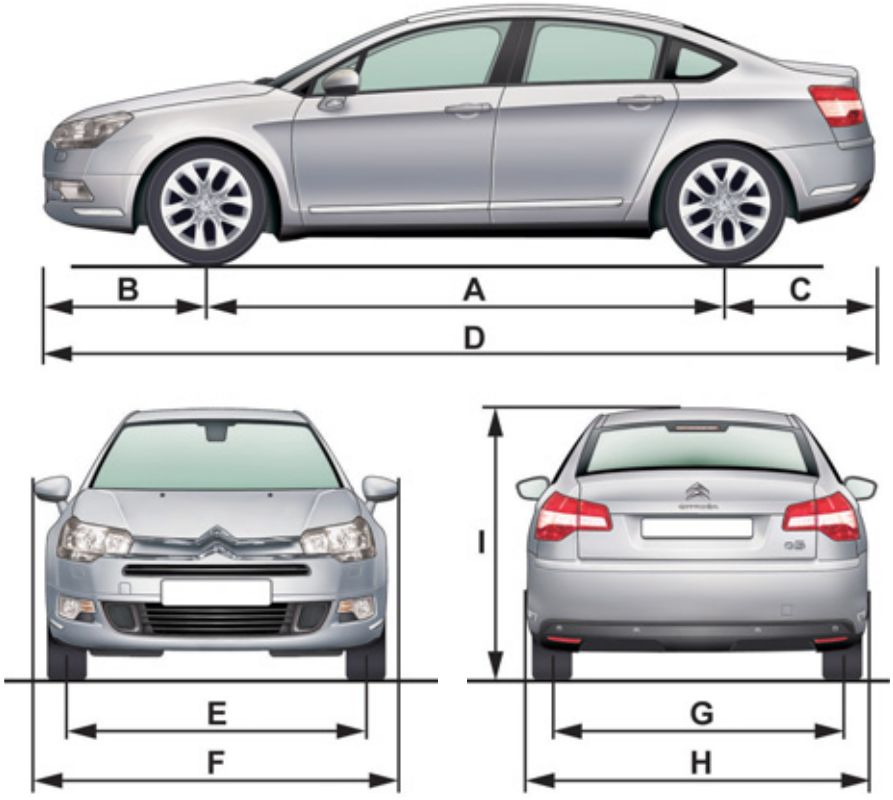
High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

DIMENSIONS (IN MM)

Exterior (Saloon)

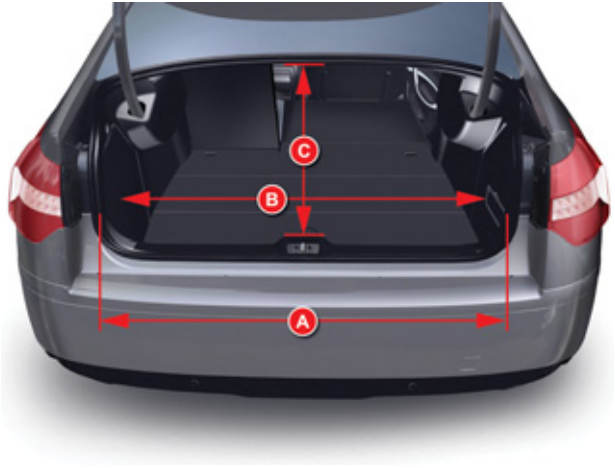
A	2 815
B	1 054
C	910
D	4 779
E	1 586
F	2 096
G	1 557
H	1 860
I*	1 451

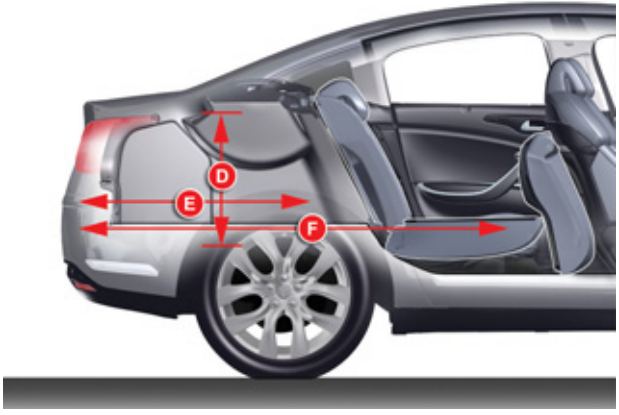
* Without roof bars.



Interior (Saloon)

A	1 030
B	1 115
C	566
D	504
E	1 040
F	1 705

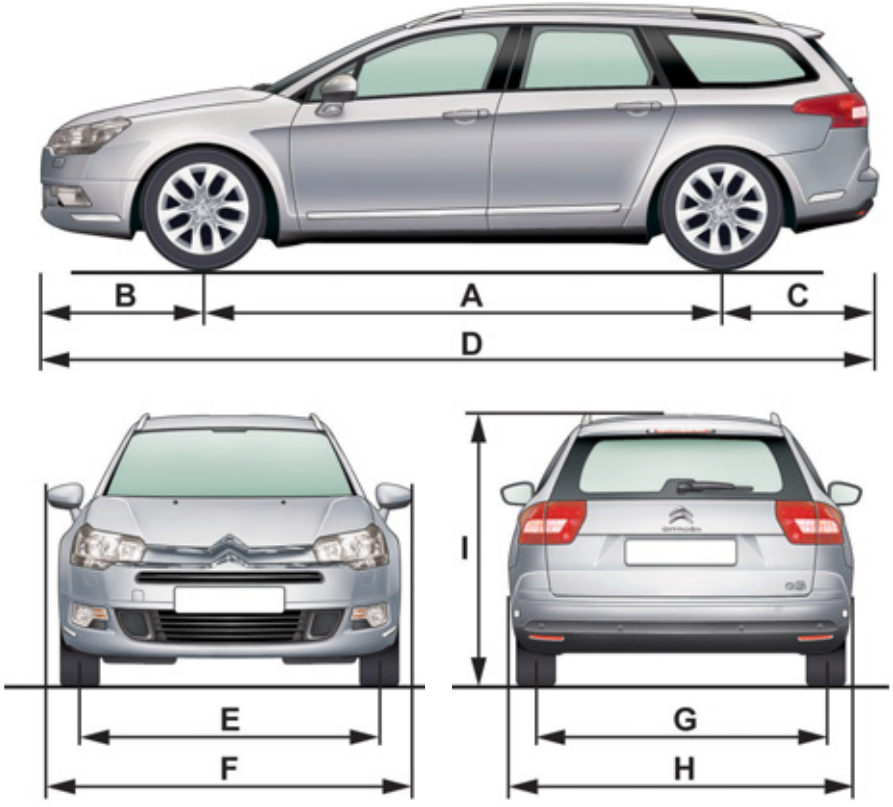




Exterior (Tourer)

A	2 815
B	1 054
C	959
D	4 829
E	1 586
F	2 096
G	1 557
H	1 860
I*	1 479

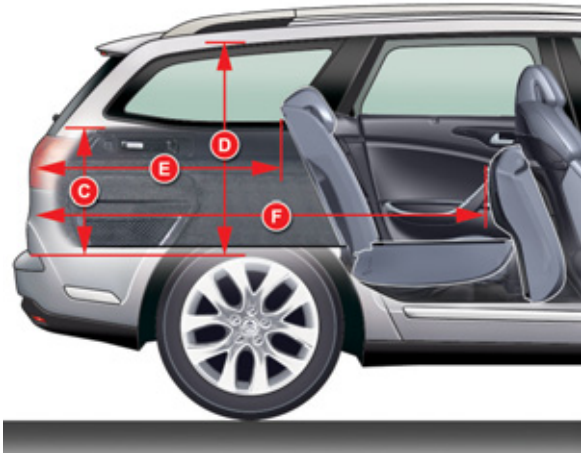
* Without roof bars.



Interior (Tourer)

A	1 060
B	1 115
C	510
D	851
E	1 058
F	1 723





IDENTIFICATION MARKINGS

Various visible markings for identification of the vehicle.

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is also indicated on the registration document.

All genuine CITROËN replacement parts are available exclusively within the dealer network.

For your safety and in order to remain within the terms of the warranty, you are advised to use only CITROËN replacement parts.

A. VIN plate

On the left hand centre door pillar.

1. EU type approval number.

2. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

3. Gross vehicle weight.

4. Gross train weight.

5. Maximum weight on front axle.

6. Maximum weight on rear axle.

B. VIN stamped on body

C. VIN on dashboard

D. Paint colour code and tyre reference

Tyre pressures

On the driver's side centre pillar.



Observe the tyre pressures indicated by CITROËN.

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold.

Never deflate a warm tyre.

When changing tyres, it is essential to use the sizes recommended for your vehicle.



EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL

EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL

CITROËN LOCALISED EMERGENCY CALL



In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green LED and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the CITROËN Emergency team*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request. The green LED goes off.

A press (at any time) of more than 8 seconds on this button, cancels the request.

The green LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of communication.

This call is dealt with by the CITROËN Emergency team which receives locating information from the vehicle and can send a detailed alert to the appropriate emergency services. In countries in which the team is not operational, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is dealt with directly by the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.



If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

If you benefit from the CITROËN eTouch offer, you also have available additional services in your MyCITROËN personal space, via the CITROËN Internet website in your country, accessible on www.citroen.com.

* These services are subject to conditions and availability.
Consult a CITROËN dealer.

CITROËN LOCALISED ASSISTANCE CALL



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.

A voice message confirms that the call has been made*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.

The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

OPERATION OF THE SYSTEM



When the ignition is switched on, the green LED comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.



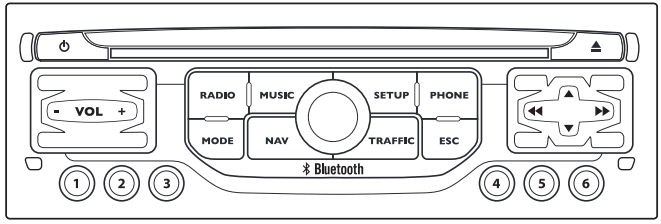
If the orange LED flashes: there is a system fault.

If the orange LED is on continuously: the backup battery must be replaced.

In either case, contact a CITROËN dealer.

If you purchased your vehicle outside the CITROËN dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modified to suit your wishes. In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

For technical reasons, particularly to improve the quality of Telematic services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.



eMyWay

SATELLITE NAVIGATION SYSTEM
MULTIMEDIA BLUETOOTH
TELEPHONE AUDIO SYSTEM

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

For safety reasons, the driver must carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the system switches off following the activation of the energy economy mode.

CONTENTS

01	First steps - Control panel	p.	226
02	Steering mounted controls	p.	228
03	General operation	p.	229
04	Navigation - Guidance	p.	231
05	Traffic information	p.	244
06	Using the telephone	p.	247
07	Radio	p.	257
08	Music media players	p.	260
09	Audio settings	p.	266
10	Configuration	p.	267
11	Screen menu map	p.	268
	Frequently asked questions	p.	272

01 FIRST STEPS

Long press: open the "**Audio settings**" menu: music ambience, bass, treble, loudness, left/right balance, front/rear fader, automatic volume adjustment.

Selection and confirmation OK dial:

Selection of an item on the screen or in a list or a menu, then confirmation with a short press.

Other than for menus and lists, a short press displays a contextual menu depending on the current screen.

Rotation with map displayed: zoom the map scale in and out.

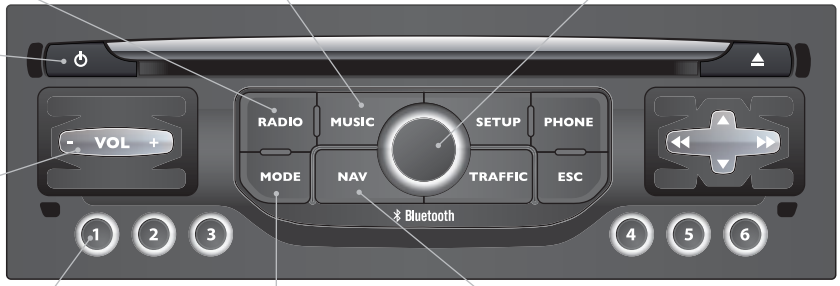
Access to the "**RADIO**" menu and display the list of stations received.

Access to the "**MUSIC**" menu, and display of the CD/MP3/Apple® tracks and folders.

Long press: management of the sorting of MP3/ WMA files/update of the list of stations received.

Short press without the engine running: on / off.

Short press with the engine running: audio source off / restore.



Volume adjustment (each source is independent, including TA messages and navigation instructions).

Short press: select pre-set radio station.

Long press: pre-set the current station.

MODE button: Selection of the type of permanent display.

Long press: black screen (DARK).

Access to the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu and display the recent destinations.

01 FIRST STEPS

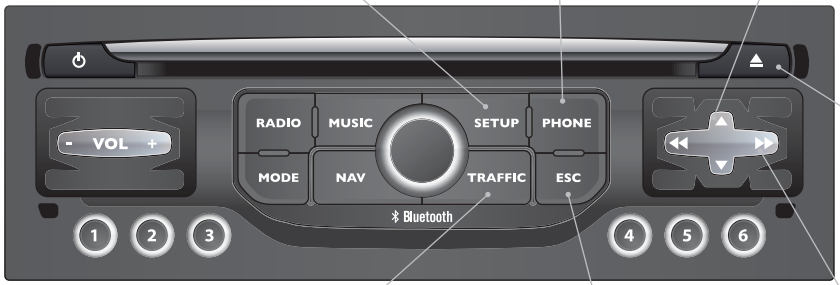
Open the "**Configuration**" menu.

Long press: access to the GPS coverage and the navigation demonstration mode.

Open the "**Telephone**" menu and display the list of recent calls or accept an incoming call.

Select:
- the previous/next line in a list or menu.
- the previous / next media folder.
- step by step selection of the previous/ next radio frequency.
- the previous / next MP3 folder.

Move up/down, in "**Move the map**" mode.



Continuous press: reinitialisation of the system.

Open the "**Traffic information**" menu and display the current traffic alerts.

ESC: abandon the current operation, up one level in the menu.

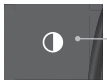
Long press: return to the permanent display.

Select:
- the next lower / higher radio frequency automatically.
- the previous / next CD track, MP3 track or media.
- the left / right of the screen when a menu is displayed.

Move left / right in "**Move the map**" mode.

02 STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS





Successive presses: "Black Panel" mode - black screen (night driving).



Short press to make a telephone call.
Call / End call.
Access the telephone menu.
Display the call log.
Long press to reject an incoming call.



Press: repeat the current navigation instruction.



Successive presses: selection of the type of information present in the screen.





Rotation: gives access to the short-cut menus depending on the display in the screen.
Short press: confirm the choice displayed in the screen.
Long press: return to the main menu.



Short press: abandon the current operation, reject an incoming call.
Long press: return to initial display.



Menu: gives access to the main menu.



VOL +: increase volume.



VOL -: decrease volume.



Successive presses: mute / restore sound.



Short press: Radio: higher frequency.
Music players: next track.
Long press: fast play.



Short press: Radio: lower frequency.
Music players: previous track.
Long press: fast play.



Short press: display the list of radio frequencies available or tracks, albums, folders.
Long press: update the list of stations received.

03 GENERAL OPERATION

MODE

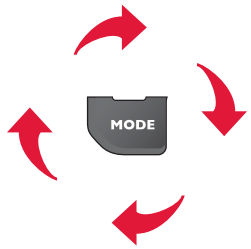
Press the **MODE** button several times in succession for access to the following displays:

"RADIO"



"TELEPHONE"
(If conversation in progress)







"MAP IN WINDOW"
(If navigation guidance in progress)



"FULL SCREEN MAP"

SETUP

SETUP: **PARAMETERS**
date and time, display configuration, sound.

RADIO

MUSIC

Changing the audio source:
RADIO: RADIO broadcasts.
MUSIC: playing MUSIC.

For cleaning the screen, the use of a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) is recommended, with no additional product.

For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to the "Screen menu map" section.

03 GENERAL OPERATION

DISPLAY ACCORDING TO CONTEXT



A press on the dial gives access to short-cut menus according to the display in the screen.

RADIO:

1 **Activate / Deactivate TA**

1 **Activate / Deactivate RDS**

1 **Guidance options**

2 **Change waveband**

2 **Activate / Deactivate TA information**

TELEPHONE (call in progress):

1 **Private mode**

1 **Put call on hold**

1 **DTMF ring tones**

1 **Hang up**

MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS, CD or USB (according to media):

Play modes:

1 **Normal**

1 **Random**

1 **Random on all media**

1 **Repetition**

FULL SCREEN MAP OR IN A NEW WINDOW:

1 **Stop / Restore guidance**

1 **Select destination**

2 **Enter an address**

2 **Directory**

2 **GPS coordinates**

1 **Divert route**

1 **Move the map**

2 **Info. on location**

2 **Select as destination**

2 **Select as stage**

2 **Save this place (contacts)**

2 **Quit map mode**

1 **Guidance criteria**

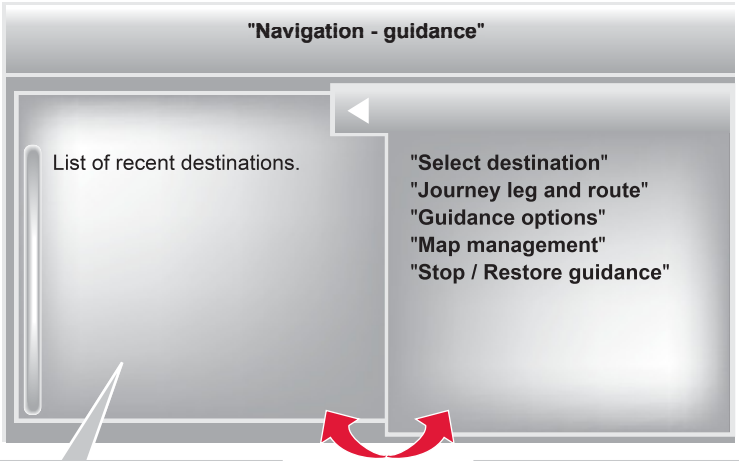
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Access to the "NAVIGATION" menu



Press **NAV**.

A long press on the end of the lighting control stalk repeats the last navigation message.

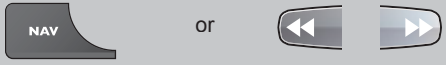


Contact a CITROËN dealer for mapping updates.

To delete the list of recent destinations, select "**Guidance options**" in the navigation menu then select "**Delete last destinations**" and confirm. Select "**Yes**" then confirm.

Deleting just one destination is not possible.

Go from the list to the menu (left/right).



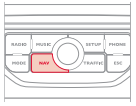
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

SELECTING A DESTINATION

TOWARDS A NEW DESTINATION

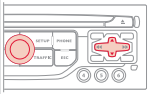
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



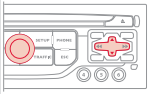
2 

Select "**Select destination**" and confirm, then select "**Enter an address**" and confirm.



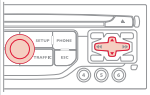
3 

Select the "**Country**" function then confirm.



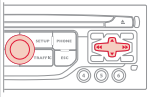
4 

Select "**Town**" function then confirm to enter the destination town.



5 

Select the letters in the name of the town one at a time, confirming each one with the dial.

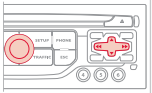


6 Selection the town from the list offered, then confirm.

A pre-set list (by entering the first few letters) of the towns in the country selected can be accessed directly by selecting and confirming "**List**" on the screen.

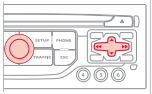
7 

Turn the dial and select "**OK**" then confirm.



8 

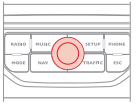
If possible, enter the "**Road**" and "**N°/X**" information in the same way.



Select "**Archive**" to save the address entered in a contact file.
The system allows up to 400 contact files to be recorded.

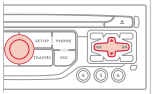
9 

Confirm "**OK**" to start guidance.



10 

Select the guidance criteria: "**Fastest route**", "**Shortest route**" or optimised "**Distance/Time**", then select the desired restriction criteria: "**With tolls**", "**With Ferry**", or "**Traffic info**" then confirm "**OK**".



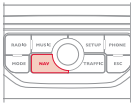
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

SELECTING A DESTINATION

TO ONE OF THE RECENT DESTINATIONS

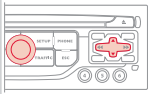
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2 

Select the desired destination and confirm to start guidance.

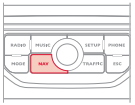


TOWARDS A CONTACT IN THE CONTACTS DIRECTORY

Navigation towards a contact imported from your telephone is only possible if the address is compatible with the system.

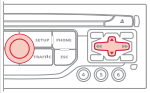
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



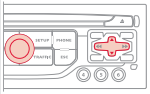
2 

Select "**Select destination**" and confirm, then select "**Directory**" and confirm.



3 

Selection the desired destination from your contacts and confirm "**OK**" to start the guidance.



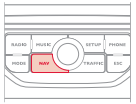
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

TOWARDS GPS COORDINATES

1



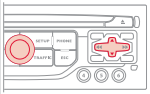
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



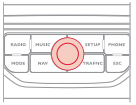
Select "**Select destination**" and confirm, then select "**GPS coordinates**" and confirm.



3



Enter the GPS coordinates and confirm "**OK**" to start the guidance.

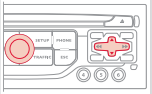


TOWARDS A POINT ON THE MAP

1



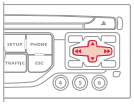
With the map displayed, press **OK** to display the contextual menu. Select "**Move the map**" and confirm.



2



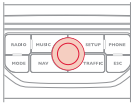
Move the cursor using the control to identify the desired destination.



3



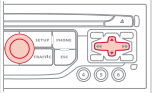
Press **OK** to display the contextual menu for "**Move the map**" mode.



4



Select "**Select as destination**" or "**Select as stage**" and confirm.



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

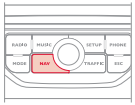
TOWARDS POINTS OF INTEREST (POI)

The points of interest (POI) indicate all of the service locations in the vicinity (hotels, various businesses, airports...).

1



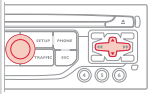
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



Select the "**Enter an address**" function and confirm, then select **Select destination** and confirm.



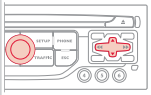
3



To select a POI close to your current location, select "**POI**" and confirm, then select "**Around the current place**" and confirm.

To select a POI as a stage on the route, select "**POI**" and confirm, then select "**On the route**" and confirm.

To select a POI as a destination, first enter the country and town (see "Towards a new destination"), select "**POI**" and confirm, finally select "**Near**" and confirm.

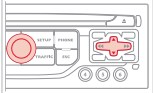


Select "**Search by Name**" to search for POIs by name and not by proximity.

4



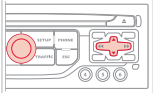
Search for POIs in the categories suggested in the following pages.



5



Select the POI and confirm "**OK**" to start the guidance.



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

This icon appears when several POIs are grouped together in the same area. Zooming in on this icon shows details of the POIs.



LIST OF PRINCIPAL POINTS OF INTEREST (POI)

- Service station
- Garage
- CITROËN
- Motor racing circuit
- Covered car park
- Car park
- Rest area
- Hotel
- Restaurant
- Cafeteria
- Bed and breakfast
- Airport
- Railway station
- Bus station
- Port
- Industrial estate
- Supermarket
- Bank
- Vending machine
- Sports complex, sports centre, sports ground
- Swimming pool
- Winter sports resort
- Entertainment, show
- Cinema
- Theme parks
- Hospital, Chemist, Vet
- Police station
- School
- University
- Town hall
- Post office
- Museum, Culture, Theatre, Historic monument
- Tourist information, Tourist attraction
- Risk area*

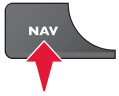
The detailed procedure for updating POIs can be found at "http://citroen.navigation.com".

* According to availability in the country.

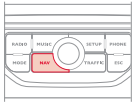
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

ALERT PARAMETERS
RISK AREAS

1



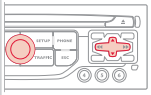
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



Select "**Guidance options**" and confirm, then select "**Set parameters for risk areas**" and confirm.



3

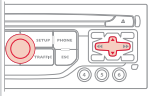


Select:

- "Visual alert"
- "Audible alert"
- "Alert only in guidance"
- "Overspeed alarm only".

The choice of time of notification defines how long in advance that Risk area warnings are given.

Select "**OK**" to confirm the screen.



!

These functions are only available if risk areas have been downloaded and installed on the system.

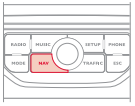
The detailed procedure for updating risk area POIs can be found at www.citroen.com.

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

ADDING A STAGE

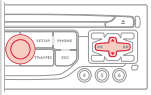
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2 

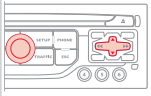
Select "**Journey leg and route**" then confirm.



3 

Select "**Add a stage**" then confirm.

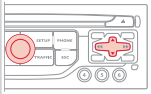
The address of the stage is entered as a destination, by "**Enter an address**", a contact in "**Directory**", or "**Previous destinations**".



4 

Select "**Close to**" a route passing close to the stage or "**Strict**" for a route passing through the stage.

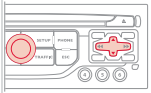
Confirm "**OK**" to start the guidance, and give a general indication of the guidance route.



ORGANISING STAGES

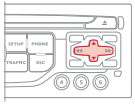
1 

To organise stages, carry out operations 1 to 2 again, then select "**Order/delete journey legs**" and confirm.



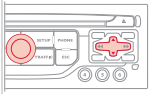
2 

Select the stage that you want to move in the order.



3 

Select and confirm to save the modifications.



Select "**Delete**" to delete the stage.

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

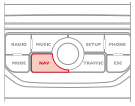
ROUTE OPTIONS

CALCULATION CRITERIA

1



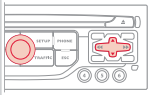
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



Select "**Guidance options**" and confirm.



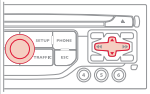
3



Select "**Define calculation criteria**" and confirm.

This function allows modification of:

- the guidance criteria: ("**Fastest route**", "**Shortest route**", "**Distance/Time**"),
- the exclusion criteria: ("**With tolls**" or "**With Ferry**"),
- traffic avoidance: ("**Traffic info**").



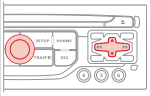
i

If traffic avoidance (Traffic info) is selected, the system suggests an alternative route if there is a delay on the guidance route.

4



Select "**OK**" and confirm to save the modifications.



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

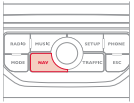
MAP MANAGEMENT

SELECTING THE POINTS OF INTEREST DISPLAYED ON THE MAP

1



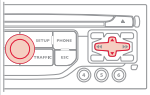
Press **NAV** to display the **"Navigation - guidance"** menu.



2



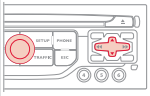
Select **"Map management"** and confirm.



3



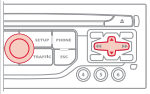
Select **"Map details"** and confirm.



4



Select from the various categories the ones that you want to display on the screen.

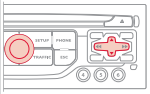


Select **"By default"** to have only **"Oil stations, garages"** and **"Accident-prone area"** appear on the map (if installed in the system).

5



Select **"OK"** then confirm and select **"OK"** again then confirm to save the modifications.



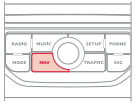
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

MAP ORIENTATION

1



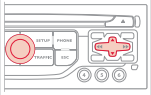
Press **NAV** to display the **"Navigation - guidance"** menu.



2



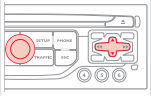
Select **"Map management"** and confirm.



3



Select **"Map orientation"** and confirm.

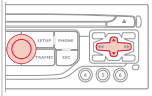


4



Select:

- **"Vehicle direction"** to have the map follow the direction of travel,
- **"North direction"** to keep the map always North up,
- **"Perspective view"** to display a perspective view.



The colour of the map, different from the day and night mode, is configured in the **"SETUP"** menu.

Street names are visible on the map from the 100 m scale.

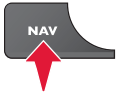
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

ADJUSTING THE GUIDANCE SPEECH SYNTHESIS

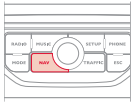
ADJUSTING THE VOLUME/DEACTIVATION

The volume setting of guidance messages is also accessible via the "**SETUP**" / "**Voice synthesis**" menu.

The volume of messages can be adjusted during the transmission of the message using the volume adjustment control.

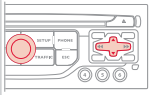
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



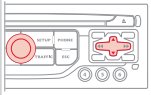
2 

Select "**Guidance options**" and confirm.



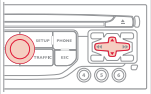
3 

Select "**Set speech synthesis**" and confirm.



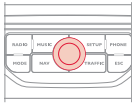
4 

Select the volume graph and confirm.



5 

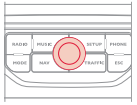
Adjust the volume to the desired level and confirm.



Select "**Deactivate**" to deactivate voice messages.

6 

Select "**OK**" and press the dial to confirm.



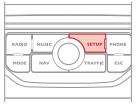
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

MALE VOICE / FEMALE VOICE

1



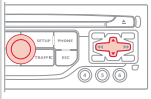
Press **SETUP** to display the configuration menu.



2



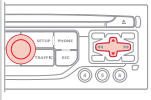
Select "**Voice synthesis**" and confirm.



3



Select "**Select male voice**" or "**Select female voice**" then confirm "**Yes**" to activate a male or female voice.
The system restarts.

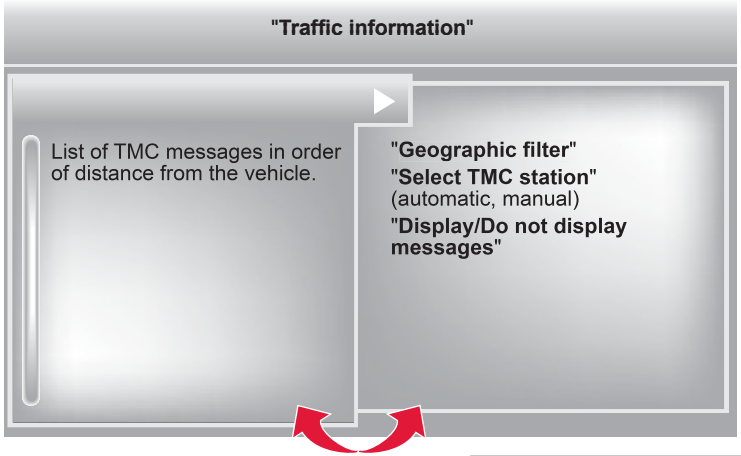


05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

Access to the "TRAFFIC INFORMATION" menu



Press "**TRAFFIC**".



Go from the list to the menu (left/right).



or



05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

CONFIGURE THE FILTERING AND DISPLAY OF TMC MESSAGES

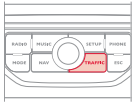
TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages contain information on traffic and weather conditions, received in real time and transmitted to the driver in the form of audible announcements and symbols on the navigation map.

The navigation system can then suggest an alternative route to avoid a traffic problem.

1



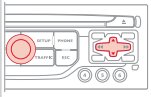
Press the **TRAFFIC** button to display the **Traffic information** menu.



2



Select the "**Geographic filter**" function and confirm.



3

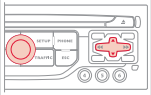


The system offers a choice of:

- "**Retain all the messages**",

or

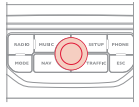
- "**Retain the messages**"
  - "**Around the vehicle**", (confirm the mileage to modify and select the distance),
  - "**On the route**".



4



Confirm "**OK**" to save the modifications.



We recommend:

- a filter on the route and
- a filter around the vehicle of:
  - 12 miles (20 km) in urban areas,
  - 30 miles (50 km) on motorways.



05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

PRINCIPAL TMC SYMBOLS

1 Black and blue triangle: general information, for example:

- Weather reports
- Traffic reports
- Wind
- Fog
- Parking
- Snow / ice

2 Red and yellow triangle: traffic information, for example:

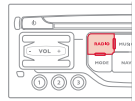
- Modified signage
- Narrow carriageway
- Slippery surface
- Accident
- Delay
- Roadworks
- Risk of explosion
- Road closed
- Demonstration
- Danger
- No entry
- Traffic jam

RECEIVING TA MESSAGES

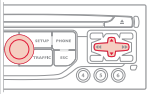
! The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

1 

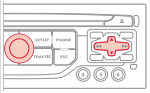
Press **RADIO** to display the **"FM / AM band"** menu.



2 
Select "**Guidance options**" then confirm.



3 
Select "**Activate / Deactivate TA**" then confirm.



! The volume setting for TA messages can be adjusted only during the transmission of this type of alert.

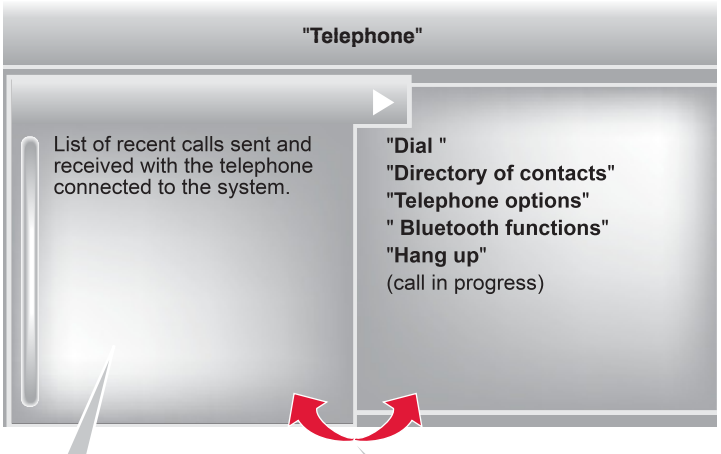
Activate or deactivate the function at any time by pressing the button. During a message, press the button to interrupt it.

06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Access to the "TELEPHONE" menu



Press **PHONE**.



In the top bar of the permanent display

- No telephone connected.
- Telephone connected.
- Incoming call.
- Outgoing call.
- Synchronisation of address book in progress.
- Telephone call in progress.

To make a call, select a number in the list and confirm **"OK"** to start the call.

Connecting a different telephone deletes the list of recent calls.

Go from the list to the menu (left/right).

PHONE or

PAIRING A BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE
FIRST CONNECTION

! For reasons of safety and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the audio unit must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary**.

Visit www.citroen.co.uk for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).

1



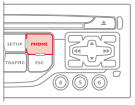
Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "shown to all" (telephone configuration).



2



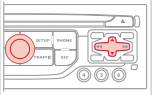
Press this button.



3



Select "**Bluetooth functions**" and confirm.

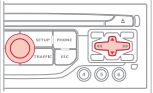


4



Select "**Peripherals search**" and confirm.

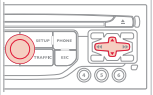
The list of peripherals detected is displayed. Wait until the "**Connect**" button is available.



5



Select the name of the desired peripheral from the list of devices detected then select "**Connect**" and confirm.



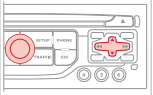
6



The system offers to connect the telephone:

- in "**Hands-free mode**" (telephone only),
- in "**Audio**" mode (streaming: playing music files on the telephone),
- or "**All**" (for selection of both modes).

Select "**OK**" and confirm.



06 USING THE TELEPHONE

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used. Check the telephone manual and with your network provider for details of the services available to you.

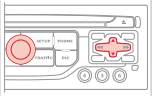
The "**Hands-free mode**" should be used in preference if "Streaming" is not desired.

The ability of the system to connect in only one mode depends on the telephone. The two modes may both connect by default.

7



Select a code for the connection then confirm "**OK**".



8

Enter the same code on the telephone then accept the connection.



Then accept automatic connection on the telephone to allow the telephone to reconnect automatically every time the vehicle is started.

Depending on the type of telephone, the system will ask you to accept or not the transfer of your contacts.

On return to the vehicle, the last telephone connected automatically reconnects, within around 30 seconds after switching on the ignition (Bluetooth activated and visible).

To modify the automatic connection mode, remove the pairing and pair the telephone again with the desired mode.

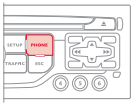
06 USING THE TELEPHONE

DIRECTORY / SYNCHRONIZING CONTACTS

1



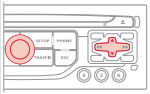
Press **PHONE** then select "**Contacts management**" and confirm.



2a



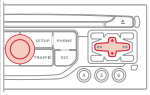
Select "**New contact**" to enter a new contact.



2b



Select "**Delete all contacts**" to delete the contacts saved in the system.

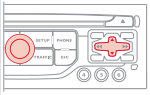


2c



Select "**Import all the entries**" to import all the contacts in the telephone and save them in the system.

Once imported, a contact remains visible whatever telephone is connected.

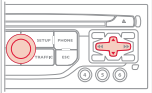


2d



Selection "**Synchronization options**":

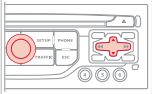
- No synchronization: only the contacts saved in the system (always present).
- Display telephone contacts: only the contacts saved in the telephone.
- Display SIM card contacts: only the contacts saved on the SIM card.
- Display all phone contacts: contacts on the SIM card and in the telephone.



2e



Select "**Contact mem. status**" to see the number of contacts saved in the system or imported, and the free memory.

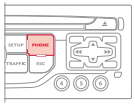


06 USING THE TELEPHONE

MANAGING CONTACTS

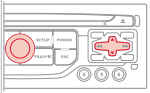
1 

Press **PHONE** then select "**Directory of contacts**" and confirm.



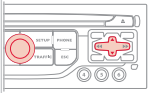
2 

Select the desired contact and confirm.



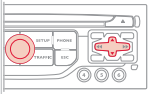
3 

Select "**Call**" to start the call.



4 

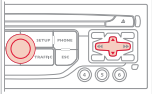
Select "**Open**" to view an external contact or modify a contact saved in the system.



i It is necessary to import an external contact to modify the record. It will be saved in the system. It is not possible to modify or delete contacts in the telephone or the SIM card via the Bluetooth connection.

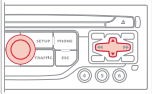
5 

Select "**Import**" to copy one contact to the system.



6 

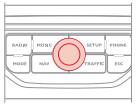
Select "**Delete**" to delete a contact saved in the system.

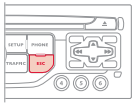


7 



Select **OK** or **ESC** to exit this menu.





06 USING THE TELEPHONE

MAKING A CALL

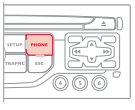
Use of the telephone is not recommended while driving.
We recommended that you park safely or make use of the steering mounted controls.

CALLING A NEW NUMBER

1



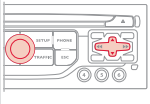
Press **PHONE** twice.



2



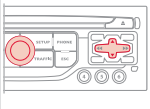
Select "**Dial**" then confirm.



3

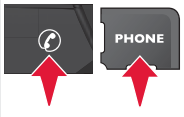


Dial the telephone number using the virtual keypad selecting each number in turn.
Confirm "**OK**" to make the call.

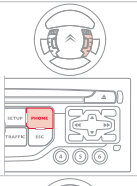


CALLING A CONTACT

1



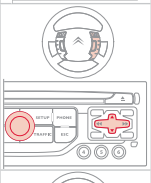
Press **TEL** or twice on **PHONE**.



2



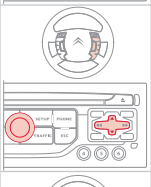
Select "**Directory of contacts**" then confirm.



3



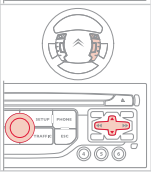
Select the desired contact and confirm.
If access was via the **PHONE** button, select "**Call**" and confirm.



4



Select the number and confirm to start the call.



06 USING THE TELEPHONE

CALLING A RECENTLY ENTERED NUMBER

1



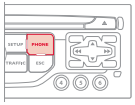
Press **TEL**, select "**Call list**" and confirm,



or



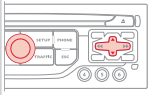
press **PHONE** to display the calls log.



2



Select the desired number and confirm.



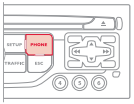
To erase the calls log, press **PHONE** twice, select "**Phone functions**" and confirm then select "**Delete calls log**" and confirm.

ENDING A CALL

1a



Press **PHONE** then select "**OK**" to end the call.



1b



Or make a long press on **TEL** at the steering mounted controls.



1c



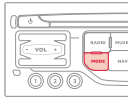
Or make two short presses on **TEL** at the steering mounted controls.



1d

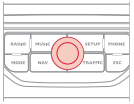


Or press the **MODE** button, as many times as necessary, until the telephone screen is displayed.





Press "**OK**" to display the contextual menu then select "**Hang up**" and confirm.



06 USING THE TELEPHONE

RECEIVING A CALL

1

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display on the screen.

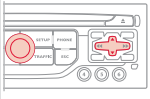
2



"Yes" to accept the call is selected by default.

Press **"OK"** to accept the call.

Select **"No"** and confirm to reject the call.





A short press on **TEL** accepts an incoming call.

A long press on **TEL** rejects an incoming call.



06 USING THE TELEPHONE

OPTIONS DURING A CALL*

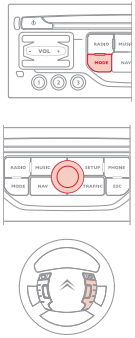
1



During a call, press the **MODE** button several times to select display of the telephone screen, then press "**OK**" to open the contextual menu.



Or make a short press on this button.

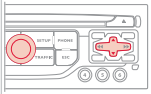


2a



Select "**Private mode**" and confirm to take the call on the handset.

Or select "**Hands-free mode**" and confirm to take the call via the vehicle's speakers.

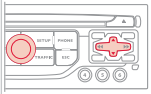


2b



Select "**Put call on hold**" and confirm to put the current call on hold.

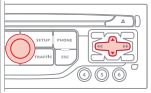
Or select "**Resume the call**" and confirm to resume the call on hold.



2c



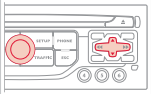
Select "**DTMF ring tones**" to use the numerical keypad, so as to navigate through the menu of an interactive vocal server.



2d



Select "**Hang up**" to end the call.







It is possible to hold a 3-way conference call by making 2 calls in succession*. Select "**Conference mode call**" in the contextual menu accessible using this button.



* Depending on the compatibility of the phone and your service plan.

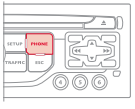
06 USING THE TELEPHONE

MANAGING PAIRED TELEPHONES

1



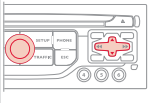
Press **PHONE** twice.



2



Select "**Bluetooth functions**".



3

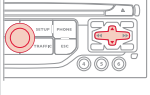


Select "**List of the paired peripherals**" and confirm.

It is possible to:

- "**Connect**" or "**Disconnect**" the selected telephone,
- delete the pairing of the selected telephone.

It is also possible to select all pairings.

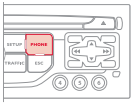


CHANGING THE RING TONE

1



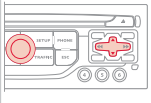
Press **PHONE** twice.



2



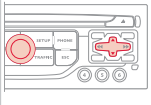
Select "**Phone functions**" and confirm.



3



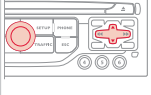
Select "**Ring options**" and confirm.



4



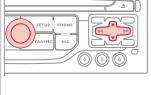
You can adjust the volume and the type of ring tone.



5



Select "**OK**" and confirm to save the changes.



07 RADIO

Access to the "RADIO" menu

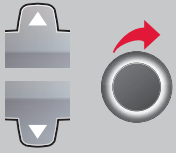


Press **RADIO**.

"FM / AM band"

Alphabetical list of stations received.

"Change Waveband" (**"AM / FM"**)
"Guidance options" (**"TA, RDS"**)
"Audio settings" (see this section)
"Update radio list"



Press ▲ or ▼ or use the rotary control to select the previous or next station in the list.

Go from the list to the menu (left/right).



or



07 RADIO

SELECTING A STATION

PRESETTING A STATION

! The external environment (hill, building, tunnel, underground car park...) may interfere with the reception, including in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is a normal result of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not in any way indicate a fault with the audio system.



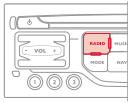
The quality of reception is represented by the number of active waves in this symbol.

1a



By alphabetical list

Press **RADIO** or **LIST**, select the station of your choice and confirm.



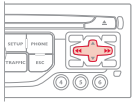
1b



By automatic frequency search

Press ◀◀ or ▶▶ for the automatic search for a lower or higher radio frequency.

Or turn the thumb wheel at the steering mounted controls.





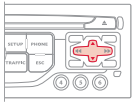


1c



By manual frequency search

Press ▲ or ▼ to adjust the radio frequency step by step.

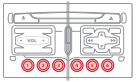


1



After selecting a station, press one of the buttons on the numerical keypad for 2 seconds to preset the current station.

An audible signal confirms that the station has been preset.





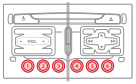
2



Press the button on the numerical keypad to recall a preset station.

Or press then turn the thumb wheel at the steering mounted controls.







07 RADIO

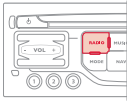
ACTIVATE / DEACTIVATE RDS

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

1



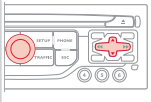
Press **RADIO**.



2



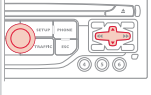
Select "**Guidance options**" and confirm.



3



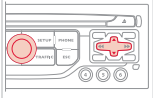
Select "**Activate / Deactivate RDS**" and confirm.





Radio displayed, press "**OK**" to display the contextual menu.

Select "**Activate / Deactivate RDS**".

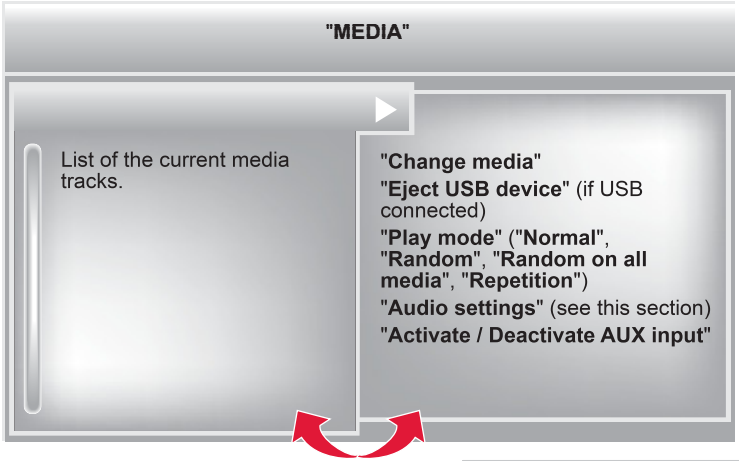


08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

Access to the "MUSIC MEDIA PLAYER" menu



Press **MUSIC**.



Go from the list to the menu (left/right).



or



08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

CD, MP3 CD / USB PLAYER

INFORMATION AND ADVICE

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg and .mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.

No other type of file (.mp4, .m3u...) can be played.

WMA files must be of the standard wma 9 type.

The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard.

If the disc is recorded in another format it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

The system supports USB mass storage or iPod devices via the USB port (suitable cable not supplied).

Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls.

Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied).



In order to be read, a USB memory stick must be formatted FAT 16 or 32.

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

SOURCES



Insert the CD in the player, insert the USB memory stick in the USB player or connect the USB peripheral to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

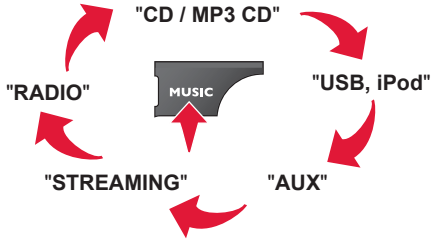


The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or connection of a USB memory stick. However, the system memorises these lists and if they are not modified, the loading time will be shorter.

Play starts automatically after a period which depends on the capacity of the USB memory stick.

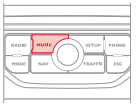
SELECTION OF SOURCE

The **MUSIC** button allows a direct change to the next media source.



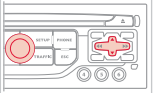
1 

Press **MUSIC** to display the **"MEDIA"** menu.



2 

Select "**Following media source**" and confirm.

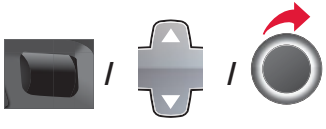


Repeat the operation as many times as necessary to obtain the desired media source (except for radio which is accessible with **RADIO**).

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

SELECTING A TRACK

Previous track.	
Next track.	
Previous folder.	
Next folder.	
Fast forward.	Long press 
Fast backward.	Long press 

MUSIC: List of USB or CD tracks and folders	
Up or down in the list.	
Confirm, next menu level.	
Up one menu level.	 

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

CONNECTING APPLE® PLAYERS

1

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

Play starts automatically.

2

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).

The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

The list of devices compatible with software versions is available from CITROËN dealers.

AUDIO STREAMING

Streaming allows audio files on your telephone to be played via the vehicle's speakers.

1

Connect the telephone: see "USING THE TELEPHONE".

Select "**Audio**" or "**All**" profile.

2

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.

Control is from the peripheral device or by using the audio system buttons.

Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.

It is recommended that you activate "**Repeat**" on the Bluetooth peripheral.

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

USING THE AUXILIARY INPUT (AUX) JACK/RCA AUDIO CABLE NOT SUPPLIED

1

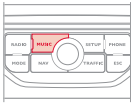
Connect the portable device (MP3, WMA player…) to the RCA audio sockets (white and red) using a JACK-RCA audio cable.



2



Press **MUSIC** to display the "**MUSIC**" menu.

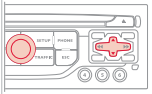


3



Select "**Activate / Deactivate AUX input**" and confirm.

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.



!

Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

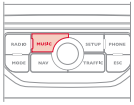
09 AUDIO SETTINGS

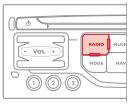
1





They are accessible by the **MUSIC** button in the control panel or by a long press on **RADIO** according to the source in use.





2

- "**Equalizer**" (choice of 6 musical ambiences)
- "**Bass**"
- "**Treble**"
- "**Loudness**" (Activate/Deactivate)
- "**Distribution**" ("**Driver**", "**All passengers**")
- "**Le-Ri balance**" (Left/Right)
- "**Fr-Re balance**" (Front/Rear)
- "**Auto. Volume**" depending on road speed (Activate/Deactivate)

!

The distribution (or spatialisation using the Arkamys© system) of sound is an audio process that allows the audio quality to be adapted to the number of listeners in the vehicle.

!

The audio settings (**Equalizer**, **Bass**, **Treble** and **Loudness**) are different and independent for each sound source.

The settings for distribution and balance are common to all sources.

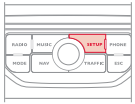
10 CONFIGURATION

DISPLAY CONFIGURATION

1



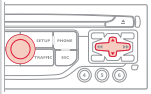
Press **SETUP** to display the "**Configuration**" menu.



2



Select "**Display configuration**" and confirm.

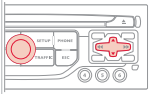


3a



Select "**Choose colour**" and confirm to select the screen colour harmony and the map presentation mode:

- day mode,
- night mode,
- automatic day/night mode, according to whether the headlamps are on.



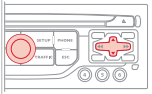
3b



Select "**Adjust luminosity**" and confirm to adjust the screen brightness.

Press "**OK**" to save the changes.

The settings for day and night are independent.



11 SCREEN MENU MAP

MAIN FUNCTION

- OPTION A
  - option A1
  - option A2
- OPTION B...

"Navigation - guidance" MENU

Select destination

- Enter an address
- Directory
- GPS coordinates (Archive)

Journey leg and route

- Add a stage
  - Enter an address
  - Directory
  - Previous destinations
- Order/delete journey legs
- Divert route
- Chosen destination

Guidance options

- Define calculation criteria
- Set speech synthesis
- Delete last destinations
- Set parameters for risk areas

Map management

- Map orientation
- Map details
- Move the map / "Vehicle monitoring"
- Mapping and updating
- Description of risk areas database

Stop / Restore guidance

"TRAFFIC" MENU

Geographic filter

- Retain all the messages
- Retain the messages
  - Around the vehicle
  - On the route

Select TMC station

- Automatic TMC
- Manual TMC
- List of TMC stations

Display / Do not display messages

11 SCREEN MENU MAP

Phone MENU

- 1 Dial
- 1 Directory of contacts
  - 2 Call
  - 2 Open
  - 2 Import
  - 2 Delete
- 1 Contacts management
  - 2 New contact
  - 2 Delete all contacts
  - 2 Import all the entries
  - 2 Synchronizing contacts
    - 3 No synchronization
    - 3 Display telephone contacts
    - 3 Display SIM card contacts
    - 3 Display all phone contacts
  - 2 Contact mem. status
- 1 Phone functions
  - 2 Ring options
  - 2 Delete calls log
- 1 Bluetooth functions
  - 2 List of the paired peripherals
    - 3 Connect
    - 3 Disconnect
    - 3 Delete
    - 3 Delete all
  - 2 Peripherals search
  - 2 Rename radiotelephone
- 1 Hang up

"RADIO" MENU

- 1 Change Waveband
- 1 Guidance options
  - 2 Activate / Deactivate TA
  - 2 Activate / Deactivate RDS
- 1 Audio settings
  - 2 Equalizer
    - 3 None
    - 3 Classical
    - 3 Jazz
    - 3 Rock
    - 3 Techno
    - 3 Vocal

11 SCREEN MENU MAP

- Bass
- Treble
- Loudness
- Distribution
  - Driver
  - All passengers
- Le-Ri balance
- Fr-Re balance
- Auto. Volume

Update radio list

"MUSIC" MENU

Change Media

Eject USB support

Read mode

- Normal
- Random
- Random on all media
- Repetition

Audio settings (same as RADIO)

Activate / Deactivate AUX input

"SETUP" MENU

Display configuration

- Choose colour
  - Harmony
  - Cartography
    - Day mode
    - Night mode
    - Auto Day/Night
- Adjust luminosity
- Set date and time
- Select units

Speech synthesis setting

- Guidance instructions volume
- Select male voice / Select female voice

11 SCREEN MENU MAP

- 1 **Select language**
- 1 **Define vehicle parameters***
  - 2 **Parking assistance**
  - 2 **Operation of wipers**
    - 3 **Engage rear wiper in REVERSE**
  - 2 **Lighting configuration**
    - 3 **Duration of guide-me home lighting**
    - 3 **Directional headlamps**
    - 3 **Mood lighting**
    - 3 **Daytime running lamps**

* The parameters vary according to the vehicle.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

The following table groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The guidance criteria may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).	Check the guidance criteria on the Navigation Menu, "Guidance options"\ "Define calculation criteria".
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
	The POIs have not been downloaded.	Download the POIs from the website: "http://citroen.navigation.com".
The Risk areas audible warning does not work.	The audible warning is not active.	Activate audible warnings in the Guidance options menu, "Navigation - guidance", "Set parameters for risk areas".
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select the "Traffic info" function in the list of guidance criteria.
I receive a Risk area alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all Risk areas positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for a Risk area located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the Risk area. Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than guidance or to reduce the time for the announcement.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	The filters are too restrictive.	Modify the "Geographic filter" settings.
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely. Check that there is a GPS coverage of at least 4 satellites (long press on the SETUP button, then select "GPS coverage").
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	- Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. - Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	A list of compatible Bluetooth mobile telephones is available from the dealer network.
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, ...).

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.
The system does not receive SMS text messages.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. Le CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio system.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - The audio system's CD player does not play DVDs. - Some recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system because they are not of the correct quality.
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This phenomenon is normal.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playing of streaming files does not start.	The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.	Start the playback from the device.
The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.	The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.	
The name of the radio station changes.	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets this information as the name of the station.	

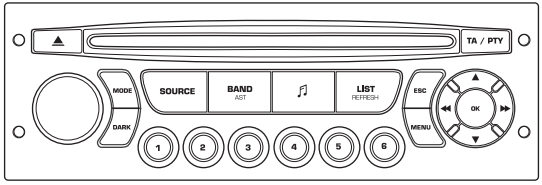
FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
In changing the equalizer setting, treble and bass return to zero.		
When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing an distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.		
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings for Volume, Bass, Treble, Equalizer and Loudness can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings for (Volume, Bass, Treble, Equalizer, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Fr-Re balance, Le-Ri balance) to the middle position, select the "None", musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
When I connect my iPhone as telephone and to the USB port at the same time, I am unable to play the music files.	When the iPhone connects automatically as a telephone, it forces the streaming function. The streaming function takes the place of the USB function which is then not useable, there is a period without sound of the track being played with Apple® players.	Disconnect and reconnect to the USB port (the USB function takes priority over streaming).

400
400
500
400
400
500



Audio system

AUDIO SYSTEM / BLUETOOTH®

Your Audio system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

For safety reasons, the driver must carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the audio equipment may switch off after a few minutes.

CONTENTS

01	First steps	p.	280
02	Steering mounted controls	p.	281
03	Main menu	p.	282
04	Audio	p.	283
05	USB Box	p.	286
06	Bluetooth functions	p.	289
07	Screen menu map	p.	292
	Frequently asked questions	p.	297

01 FIRST STEPS

Select source:
radio, audio CD / MP3 CD, USB, Jack connection, Streaming, AUX.

Select wavebands FM1, FM2, FMast and AM.

Audio settings: front/ rear fader, left/right balance, bass/treble, loudness, audio ambiences.

Display the list of local stations.
Long press: CD tracks or MP3 folders (CD / USB).

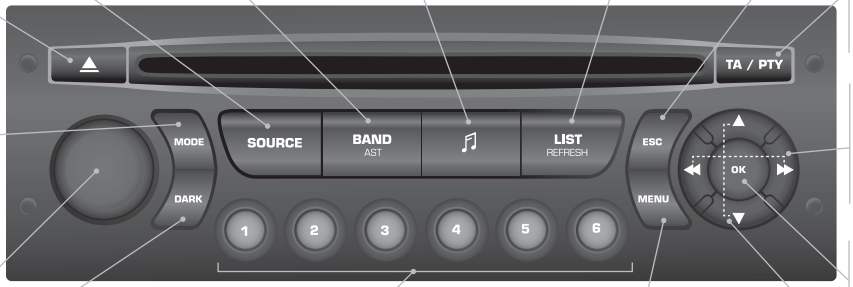
Abandon the current operation.

TA (Traffic Announcements) on/off.
Long press: PTY* (radio Programme TYpe) mode.

Eject CD.

Select the screen display mode:
Date, audio functions, trip computer, telephone.

On/off, volume setting.



Automatic frequency search down/up.
Select previous/next CD, MP3 or USB track.

Confirm.

The DARK button changes the screen display for improved driving comfort at night.
1st press: upper bar only illuminated.
2nd press: black screen.
3rd press: return to standard display.

Buttons 1 to 6:
Select a pre-set radio station.
Long press: pre-set a station.

Display main menu.

Select next frequency down/up.
Select previous/next MP3 folder.
Select previous/next folder / genre / artist / playlist (USB).

* Available according to version.

02 STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS





Activation/deactivation of Black Panel mode (night driving).



Accept an incoming call / end a call in progress.
Open the telephone menu and display the call log.
Long press: reject an incoming call.





Press:
Access to the short-cut menus depending on the display in the screen.
Confirm a function selected from a menu.
Rotation:
Select the previous/next pre-set RADIO station.
Select previous/next CD or MP3 folder.





Abandon the current operation.
Reject an incoming call.
Long press: return to general display.



Access to the main menu.

Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute.



RADIO: automatic search for a lower/higher frequency.
CD / MP3:
select the previous/next track.
press and hold: fast forward/rewind play.





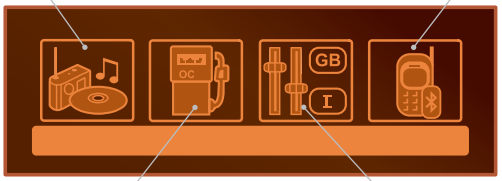
RADIO: display the list of stations available.
Long press: update the list of radio stations.
CD / MP3:
display the list of CD tracks and and folders.

03 MAIN MENU

AUDIO FUNCTIONS:
radio, CD, USB, options.

TELEPHONE:
Bluetooth hands-free, pairing, management of a call.

> MONOCHROME SCREEN C



TRIP COMPUTER: entering of distances, alerts, status of functions.

PERSONALISATION-CONFIGURATION:
vehicle parameters, display, languages.

> MONOCHROME SCREEN A



For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to the "Screen menu map" in this section.

04 AUDIO

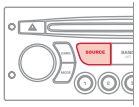
The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, ...) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio system.

RADIO

SELECTING A STATION

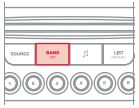
1 

Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select the radio.



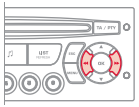
2 

Press the BAND AST button to select a waveband: FM1, FM2, FMast, AM.



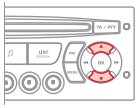
3 

Briefly press one of the buttons to carry out an automatic search of the radio stations.



4 

Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search up / down for radio frequencies.

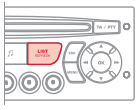






Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of stations received locally (30 stations maximum).

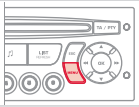
To update this list, press for more than two seconds.



RDS

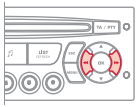
1 

Press the MENU button.



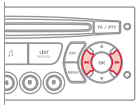
2 

Select AUDIO FUNCTIONS then press OK.



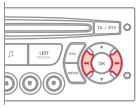
3 

Select the FM WAVEBAND PREFERENCES function then press OK.



4 

Select ACTIVATE RDS then press OK. RDS appears on the screen.





In radio mode, press OK directly to activate / deactivate RDS mode.

!

The RDS, if displayed, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. Under conditions of very weak reception, the system may change to a regional station.

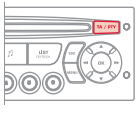
04 AUDIO

RECEIVING TA MESSAGES

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

1 

Press the TA button to activate or deactivate traffic messages.



CD
PLAYING A CD

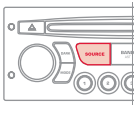
Insert circular compact discs only.

Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the original player.

Without pressing the EJECT button, insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

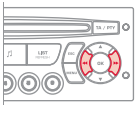
1 

To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select CD.



2 

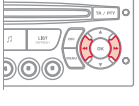
Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.



Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of tracks on the CD.

3 

Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forwards or fast backwards.



04 AUDIO

MP3 CD
PLAYING AN MP3 COMPILATION

Insert an MP3 compilation in the player.

The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.

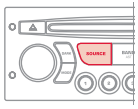
On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 folder levels. However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played.

While the CD is being played, the folder structure is not followed.

All of the files are displayed on a single level.

1 

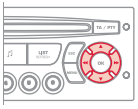
To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select CD.



2 

Press one of the buttons to select a folder on the CD.

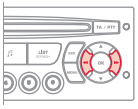
Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.



Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.

3 

Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward play.



MP3 CD
INFORMATION AND ADVICE

The MP3 format, an abbreviation of MPEG 1.2 & 2.5 Audio Layer 3, is an audio compression standard which permits the recording of several tens of music files on a single disc.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording, the ISO 9660 level 1.2 or Joliet file format is recommended.

If the disc is recorded in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording format is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet format is recommended.

The audio system will only play files with the extension ".mp3" with a sampling rate of 22.05 KHz or 44.1 KHz. No other type of file (.wma, .mp4, .m3u...) can be played.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters without using special characters (e.g. " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing or displaying problems.

Empty CDs are not recognised and may damage the system.

05 USB BOX

USING THE USB BOX

The list of compatible equipment and the compression rates supported are available from CITROËN dealers.

1

This unit consists of a USB port and an auxiliary Jack socket*. The audio files are transmitted from a portable device - digital player or a USB memory stick - to your Audio system and heard via the vehicle's speakers.



2

USB memory stick (1.1, 1.2 and 2.0) or Apple® player of generation 5 or later:

- USB memory sticks should be formatted FAT or FAT 32 (NTFS not supported),
- the Apple® player lead is essential,
- navigation through the file database is also possible by means of the steering mounted controls.



3

Other Apple® players of earlier generations and players using the MTP protocol*:

- play via Jack-Jack lead only (not supplied),
- navigation through the file database is from the portable device.



CONNECTING A USB MEMORY STICK

1



Connect the memory stick to the port, directly or using a lead. If the audio equipment is switched on, the USB source is detected as soon as it is connected. Play begins automatically after a delay which depends on the capacity of the USB memory stick.

The file formats supported are .mp3 (mpeg1 layer 3 only), .wma (standard 9 only, 128 kbits/sec compression), .wav and .ogg.

Certain playlist formats are supported (.m3u, ...)

On reconnection of the previous memory stick used, play is resumed automatically with the last track played.

!

The system puts together playlists (temporary memory) created over a period which depends on the capacity of the USB device.

The other sources are available during this time.

The playlists are updated each time the ignition is switched off or each time a USB memory stick is connected.

When connecting for the first time, the classification suggested is by folder. When you reconnect, the classification selected previously is retained.

* According to vehicle.

05 USB BOX

USING THE USB PORT

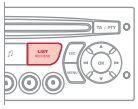
2

Press and hold LIST to display the different classifications.

Select by Folder / Artist / Genre / Playlist, press OK to select the classification required, then press OK again to confirm.



- by Folder: all folders containing audio files recognised on the peripheral device.
- by Artist: all of the artist names defined in the ID3 Tags, classified in alphabetical order.
- by Genre: all of the genres defined in the ID3 Tags.
- by Playlist: in accordance with the playlists recorded on the USB device.



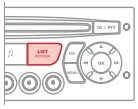




Press LIST briefly to display the previously selected classification.

Navigate through the list using the left/ right and up/down buttons.

Confirm the selection by pressing OK.

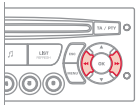


3



Press one of these buttons to gain access to the previous / next track on the classification list currently being played.

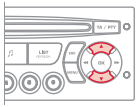
Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward play.



4



Press one of these buttons to gain access to the previous / next Genre, Folder, Artist or Playlist on the classification list currently being played.



CONNECTING AN APPLE® PLAYER VIA THE USB PORT

1

The lists available are Artist, Genre and Playlist (as defined in the Apple® player).

Selection and Navigation are described in steps 1 to 4 above.

!

Do not connect a hard disk or USB connection device other than audio equipment to the USB port. This could damage your installation.

05 USB BOX

USING THE AUXILIARY SOCKET (AUX)

RCA SOCKET

The RCA auxiliary socket permits the connection of a portable device (MP3 player...).

1

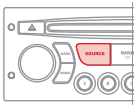
Connect the portable device (MP3 player…) to the audio sockets (white and red, RCA type) using a suitable cable (not supplied).



2



Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select AUX.



ADJUSTING THE VOLUME OF THE AUXILIARY SOURCE

1

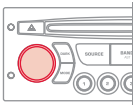
First adjust the volume of your portable device.



2



Then adjust the volume of your audio system.



The display and control is via the portable device.



06 BLUETOOTH FUNCTIONS

BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE

SCREEN C
(Available according to model and version)

The services offered depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth equipment used.
Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you.

PAIRING A TELEPHONE / FIRST CONNECTION

! For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio equipment must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on.

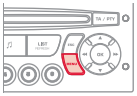
Go to www.citroen.co.uk for more information (compatibility, more help, ...).

1 Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration.



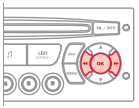
2 

Press the MENU button.



3 

In the menu, select:
- Bluetooth telephone function - Audio
- Bluetooth configuration
- Perform a Bluetooth search



4 A window is displayed with a message that a search is in progress.

5 The first 4 telephones recognised are displayed in this window.

! The TELEPHONE menu permits access to the following functions in particular: Directory*, Call list, Pairing management.

* If your telephone is fully compatible.

6 Select the telephone to be connected from the list. Only one telephone can be connected at a time.

7 A virtual keypad is displayed in the screen: enter a code with at least 4 digits.
Confirm by pressing OK.



8 A message is displayed in the screen of the telephone chosen. To accept the pairing, enter the same code on the telephone, then confirm with OK.

If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not limited.



9 A message that the pairing has been successful appears in the screen.

i The automatic connection authorised is only active after the telephone has been configured.
The directory and the call list can be accessed after the synchronisation period.

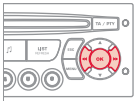
06 BLUETOOTH FUNCTIONS

RECEIVING A CALL

1 An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the vehicle's screen.

2 

Select the YES tab on the display using the buttons and confirm by pressing OK.





Press this button to accept the call.



MAKING A CALL

1 From the Bluetooth telephone function Audio menu, select Manage the telephone call then Call, Call list or Directory.

2 

Press this button for more than two seconds for access to your directory, then navigate with the thumb wheel.

Or

To dial a number, use your telephone's keypad, with the vehicle stationary.





ENDING A CALL

1 

During a call, press this button for more than 2 seconds.

Confirm with OK to end the call.



06 BLUETOOTH FUNCTIONS

BLUETOOTH AUDIO STREAMING*

!

Wireless transmission of the telephone's music files via the audio equipment. The telephone must be able to manage the appropriate Bluetooth profiles (Profiles A2DP / AVRCP).

1

Initiate the pairing between the telephone and the vehicle. This pairing can be initiated from the vehicle's telephone function menu or via the telephone's keypad. See steps 1 to 9 on the previous pages. During the pairing phase, the vehicle must be stationary with the key in the ignition.



2

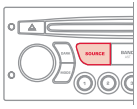
Select the telephone to be connected from the telephone function menu.

The audio system connects to a newly paired telephone automatically.

3



Activate the streaming source by pressing the SOURCE button**. The tracks to be played can be controlled as usual via the buttons on the audio system control panel and the steering mounted controls***. The contextual information can be displayed on the screen.



* Depending on the compatibility of the telephone.

** In certain cases, playing of the Audio files must be initiated from the keypad.

*** If the telephone supports the function.

07 SCREEN MENU MAP



MONOCHROME A

MAIN FUNCTION

- OPTION A
  - OPTION A1
  - OPTION A2
- OPTION B...

RADIO-CD

- RDS SEARCH
- REG MODE
- CD REPEAT
- RANDOM PLAY

VEHICLE CONFIG*

- REV WIPE ACT
- GUIDE LAMPS

* The parameters vary according to vehicle.

OPTIONS

- DIAGNOSTICS
  - CONSULT
  - ABANDON

07 SCREEN MENU MAP



UNITS

- TEMPERATURE: °CELSIUS / °FAHRENHEIT
- FUEL CONSUMPTION: KM/L - L/100 - MPG

DISPLAY ADJUST

- YEAR
- MONTH
- DATE
- HOUR
- MINUTES
- 12 H/24 H MODE

LANGUAGE

- FRANCAIS
- ITALIANO
- NEDERLANDS
- PORTUGUES
- PORTUGUES-BRASIL
- DEUTSCH
- ENGLISH
- ESPANOL

07 SCREEN MENU MAP

MONOCHROME C

Press the OK dial for access to short-cut menus according to the display on the screen:



RADIO

1 activate / deactivate RDS

1 activate / deactivate REG mode

1 activate / deactivate radiotext

CD / MP3 CD

1 activate / deactivate Intro

1 activate / deactivate track repeat (the entire current CD for CD, the entire current folder for MP3 CD)

1 activate / deactivate random play (the entire current CD for CD, the entire current folder for MP3 CD)

USB

1 activate / deactivate track repeat (of the current folder / artist / genre / playlist)

1 activate / deactivate random play (of the current folder / artist / genre / playlist)

MONOCHROME C

Pressing the MENU button displays:

AUDIO FUNCTIONS

- **FM BAND PREFERENCES**
  - **alternative frequencies (RDS)**
    - activate / deactivate
  - **regional mode (REG)**
    - activate / deactivate
  - **radio-text information (RDTXT)**
    - activate / deactivate
- **PLAY MODES**
  - **album repeat (RPT)**
    - activate / deactivate
  - **track random play (RDM)**
    - activate / deactivate

TRIP COMPUTER

- **ENTER DISTANCE TO DESTINATION**
  - **Distance: x miles**
- **ALERT LOG**
  - **Diagnostics**
- **STATUS OF THE FUNCTIONS***
  - **Functions activated or deactivated**

* The parameters vary according to vehicle.

07 SCREEN MENU MAP

PERSONALISATION-CONFIGURATION

- **DEFINE THE VEHICLE PARAMETERS***
- **DISPLAY CONFIGURATION**
  - **video brightness adjustment**
    - normal video
    - inverse video
    - brightness (- +) adjustment
  - **date and time adjustment**
    - day/month/year adjustment
    - hour/minute adjustment
    - choice of 12 h / 24 h mode
  - **choice of units**
    - l/100 km - mpg - km/l
    - °Celsius / °Fahrenheit
- **CHOICE OF LANGUAGE**

BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE

- **BLUETOOTH CONFIGURATION**
  - **Connect/Disconnect a device**
  - **Telephone function**
  - **Audio Streaming function**
    - Consult the paired device
    - Delete a paired device
    - Perform a Bluetooth search
- **CALL**
  - **Calls list**
    - Directory
- **MANAGE THE TELEPHONE CALL**
  - **Terminate the current call**
  - **Activate private mode**

* The parameters vary according to vehicle.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs. - Due to their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system.
The message "USB peripheral error" is displayed on the screen.	The battery of the peripheral may not be sufficiently charged.	Recharge the battery of the peripheral device.
The Bluetooth connection is cut.	The USB memory stick is not recognised. The memory stick may be corrupt.	Reformat the memory stick.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND AST button to return to the waveband (AM, FM1, FM2, FMAST) on which the stations are stored.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.	Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.
With the engine off, the audio equipment switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio equipment operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the audio equipment switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio equipment switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction of the volume or stopping of the playing of the CD.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

Exterior (Saloon)





Remote control key 67-72
- opening / closing
- anti-theft protection
- starting
- battery

Very cold climate screen 203
Exterior lighting controls 86-89
Headlamp adjustment 89
Changing bulbs 181-185
- front lamps
- foglamps
- direction indicator repeaters

Lane departure warning system 154

Door mirrors 65

Doors 77-79
- opening / closing
- central locking
- emergency control

Child lock 113
Electric windows 75-76

Tyre under-inflation detection 115-116
Braking assistance 117
Trajectory control 118
Tyre pressures 221

Accessories 205
Panoramic sunroof 82
Roof bars 201

Fuel tank 84

Tailgate 79
Temporary puncture repair kit ... 174-176
Changing a wheel 177-180
- tools
- removing

Front and/or rear visual and audible parking sensors 157
Towbar 200
Towing 198-199

Changing bulbs 185-186, 189
- rear lamps
- 3rd brake lamp
- number plate lamps

Exterior (Tourer)



Remote control key..... 67-72
- opening / closing
- anti-theft protection
- starting
- battery

Very cold climate screen..... 203
Exterior lighting controls 86-89
Headlamp adjustment..... 89
Changing bulbs..... 181-185
- front lamps
- foglamps
- direction indicator repeaters

Lane departure warning system 154

Door mirrors..... 65

Doors 77-79
- opening / closing
- central locking
- emergency control

Child lock 113
Electric windows 75-76

Tyre under-inflation detection 115-116
Braking assistance 117
Trajectory control 118
Tyre pressures..... 221

Accessories 205
Panoramic sunroof 83
Roof bars 201

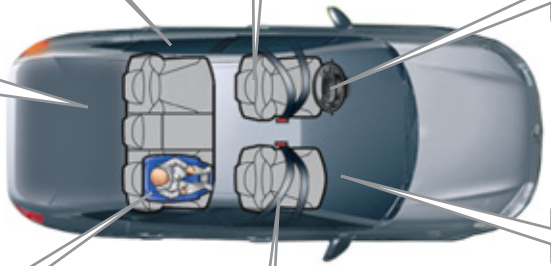
Fuel tank..... 84

Boot 80
Reversing camera 158
Temporary puncture repair kit... 174-176
Changing a wheel..... 177-180
- tools
- removing

Front and/or rear visual and audible parking sensors..... 157
Towbar 200
Towing 198-199

Changing bulbs..... 187-189
- rear lamps
- 3rd brake lamp
- number plate lamps

Interior



Side blinds 100

Front seats..... 60-63
Rear seats 63-64

Boot fittings (Saloon) 101
- stowing rings

Boot fittings (Tourer) 102
- stowing rings
- hooks
- storage net...

Load space cover (Tourer)..... 103

Luggage retaining net (Tourer)..... 103-104

Airbags 122-125

Glove box 98

Child seats..... 105-108
ISOFIX mountings 109-112

Seat belts..... 119-121

Instruments and controls

Courtesy lamps 94-95
Rear view mirror 65-66
Interior mood lighting 96
Sun visor 98

Instrument panels 26
Warning lamps 32-38
Indicators 39-41
Gear shift indicator 136
Buttons 42
- trip recorder
- lighting dimmer

Parking space sensors 155

Stop & Start 141
Multifunction screens 43-46
Hazard warning lamps 114

Dashboard fuses 191-193

Interior fittings 98-100
- glove box
- ski flaps
- auxiliary sockets
- mats...

Windows 75-76
Door mirrors 65

Ventilation 47-48
Mono-zone digital air conditioning 49-51
Dual-zone digital air conditioning ... 52-55
Programmable heating 56-59

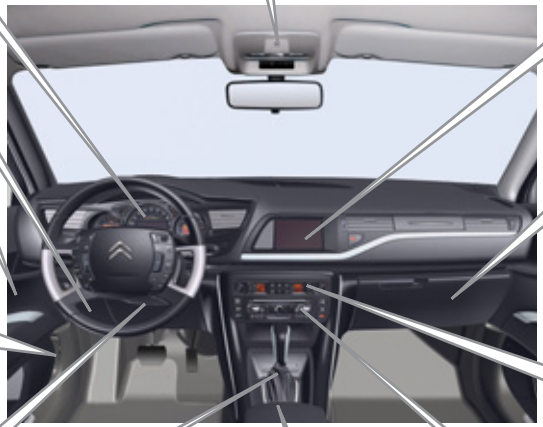
Opening the bonnet 162

Steering wheel adjustment 66

Emergency or assistance call 114, 223-224
eMyWay 225
Audio system 279
Setting the date/time 44, 46

"Hydractive III +" electronic suspension 159
Manual / electronic /automatic gearboxes 135, 137-140, 144-147
Hill start assist 134

Parking brake, manual 126
Parking brake, electric 127-133



Steering mounted controls



Lighting 86-89
- sidelamps / dipped beam headlamps
- main beam headlamps

Automatic illumination of headlamps ... 88
Daytime running lamps 88

Headlamp adjustment 89

Speed limiter 150-151
Cruise control 152-153

Fixed centred controls steering wheel 148-149
Trip computer 29-30

Automatic rain sensitive wipers 93
Wash-wipe 93
Audio system controls 149

Wipers 92-94

Horn 114

Steering wheel adjustment 66

Technical data - Maintenance

Petrol engines..... 207
Petrol weights..... 208-209
Diesel engines..... 210-211
Diesel weights..... 212-215
N1 version weights (Tourer)..... 216
Dimensions (Saloon)..... 217-218
Dimensions (Tourer)..... 219-220
Identification markings..... 221

Running out of fuel - Diesel..... 164

Very cold climate protection..... 202

Checking the levels..... 170-171
- oil
- brake fluid
- power steering fluid
- coolant
- screenwash / headlamp wash fluid

Changing bulbs..... 181-190
- front
- rear

Checking components..... 172-173
- battery
- air / passenger compartment filter
- oil filter
- particle emission filter (Diesel)
- brake pads / discs

Engine compartment fuses..... 191, 194-195

Battery..... 196-197
Energy economy mode..... 198

Opening the bonnet..... 162
Petrol under-bonnet layout..... 165-166
Diesel under-bonnet layout..... 167-169



ALPHABETICAL INDEX

A ABS and EBFD systems 117
Accessories 205
Accessory socket, 12 volt 100
Adjusting headlamps 89
Adjusting head restraints ... 60, 63
Adjusting seat belt height 120
Adjusting the steering wheel ... 66
Airbags, curtain 124, 125
Airbags, front 125
Airbags, lateral 124, 125
Air conditioning 24, 48, 49, 53
Air conditioning, digital 52
Air conditioning, mono-zone 49
Air diffuser 47
Air distribution adjustment 50, 53
Air filter 172
Air flow 24
Air flow adjustment 49, 52
Air intake 49
Air recirculation 49, 52
Air vents 47, 48
Alarm 73
Alert / warning log 31, 45
Alloy wheels 204
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 117
Anti-pinch 75, 82, 83
Anti-theft 69
Armrest, front 99
Armrest, rear 100
Assistance call 114, 224
Audible warning 114
Audio streaming (Bluetooth) 264, 291
Audio system 279-298
Automatic illumination of headlamps 86, 88
Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps 114

A Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers 92, 93
Auxiliary sockets 99, 261, 246, 286

B Battery 172, 196
Battery, charging 197
Battery, remote control 71, 72
Blind for panoramic sunroof 83
Blinds 100
Bluetooth (hands-free) ... 248, 289
Bluetooth (telephone) 248, 289
Bonnet 162
Bonnet stay 162
Boot 79, 80
Boot (fittings) 101, 102
Brake discs 173
Brake lamps 185, 187
Brake pads 173
Brakes 173
Braking assistance system 117

C Capacity, fuel tank 84
CD MP3 ..... 261, 285
Central locking 68, 77
Changing a bulb 181-190
Changing a fuse 191-195
Changing a wheel 177-180
Changing a wiper blade 94
Changing the remote control battery 71
CHECK 31
Checking levels 170, 171

C Checking the engine oil level 40, 170
Checks 162-173
Child lock 113
Children 76, 106-113, 121, 123
Child seats 105, 107
Child seats, conventional 107, 108
Closing the boot 68
Closing the doors 68, 77
Cold climate screen 203
Connectors, audio 99, 261, 264, 286
Control for panoramic sunroof blind 83
Coolant level 41, 171
Coolant temperature indicator ... 41
Courtesy lamps 94
Cruise control 152
Cup holder 99, 100

D Date (setting) 44, 46
Daytime running lamps ... 88, 181
Deactivating the passenger airbag 123
Deadlocking 68
Defrosting 50, 55
Demisting 50, 55
Demisting the rear screen 51, 55
Diesel additive level 171
Dimensions 217
Dipped beam 86, 181
Dipstick 40, 170
Directional lighting 90, 91
Direction indicators 114, 181, 187

D Doors 77
Doors emergency control 78
Driving economically 24
Driving positions (storing) 63

E EBA (Emergency braking assistance) 117
Eco-driving 24
Economy mode 198
Electric window controls 75
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) 117
Electronic engine immobiliser 69, 72
Emergency boot release 79
Emergency braking system ... 117
Emergency call 114, 224
Emergency warning lamps 114
eMyWay 45, 225
Energy economy mode 198
Engine, Diesel 85, 167
Engine, petrol 85, 165
Engine compartment 165, 167
Engine compartment fusebox 196
Engine oil 170
Engine oil level indicator 40, 170
Engines 207, 210
Environment 24, 72, 173, 199
Equipment settings 45
ESP/ASR 118

F Filling with fuel 84, 85
Fitting a wheel 179
Fitting roof bars 201
Fittings, boot 101, 102
Flashing indicators 114
Foglamps, front 87, 184
Foglamps, rear 87, 185, 187
Folding the rear seats 64
Front seats 60-63
Fuel 24, 84, 85
Fuel consumption 24
Fuel filler cap 84
Fuel filler flap 84, 85
Fuel gauge 41, 84
Fuel tank 84, 85
Fusebox, dashboard 191
Fuses 191

G G.P.S. 231
Gearbox, automatic 144, 173
Gearbox, electronic 137, 141
Gearbox, manual 135, 136, 141, 173
Gear lever, automatic gearbox 144
Gear lever, electronic gearbox system 137
Gear lever, manual gearbox 135
Gear shift indicator 136
Glove box 98
Guidance 232, 239
Guide-me-home 69, 88, 89

H Hands-free kit 248, 289
Hazard warning lamps 114
Headlamp adjustment 89
Headlamps, directional 89-91
Headlamp wash 93
Headlamp wash reservoir 171
Head restraints, front 60, 61
Head restraints, rear 63, 64
Heated seats 60, 62
Heating 24, 48, 49, 53
Height and reach adjustment, steering wheel 66
High load retaining net 103
Hill start assist 134
Horn 114
Hydractive III+ suspension 159

I Identification plates 221
Indicator lamps, status 32-38
Indicators, direction 114
Inflating tyres 24, 221
Inputs for audio system 91, 261, 264, 286
Instrument panel lighting 42
Instrument panels 26
Instrument panel screen 26, 136
Interior mood lighting 96
ISOFIX child seats 109, 111, 112
ISOFIX mountings 109

J Jack 177
JACK socket 265, 286

K Keeping children safe 76, 106-113, 121, 123
Key with remote control 67-69, 72

L Labels, identification 221
Lamps, warning and indicator 32, 36, 38
Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) 154
Level, brake fluid 170
Level, headlamp wash 171
Level, power steering fluid 170
Levels and checks 165-173
Lighting 96
Lighting, guide-me home 69, 88, 89
Lighting, interior 94
Lighting bulbs (replacement) 181-190
Lighting control stalk 86
Lighting dimmer 42
Lighting on reminder 87
Loading 24
Load space cover 103
Localised assistance call 224
Localised emergency call 224
Locating your vehicle 69
Locking from the inside 77

M Main beam 86, 181
Maintenance 24
Map reading lamps 94
Markings, identification 221
Massage function 62
Mat 99
Menu, main 27, 282
Mirror, rear view 65, 66
Mirrors, door 65
Misfuel prevention 85
Motorway function (direction indicators) 114
Mountings for ISOFIX seats 109
MP3 CD 261, 285
Multifunction screen 43
Music media players 260, 284

N Navigation 231
Number plate lamps 189

O Oil filter 172
Oil level 40, 170
Oil temperature indicator 41
Opening the bonnet 162
Opening the boot 67
Opening the doors 67, 77
Opening the fuel filler flap 84
Opening the panoramic sunroof blind 83
Opening the sunroof 82
Operation indicator lamps 32-38

P Paint colour code 221
Paintwork, matt 204
Panoramic glass sunroof 83
Parking brake 126, 127, 173
Parking brake, electric 127
Parking sensors, rear 157
Parking space sensor 155
Particle emission filter 171, 172
Passenger compartment filter 172
Player, CD MP3 ..... 261, 285
Port, USB 99, 286
Priming the fuel system 163
Programmable heating (Webasto) 56
Protecting children 76, 106-113, 121, 123
Puncture 174

R Radio 257, 283
RCA sockets 265, 288
Reading lamps, rear 94
Rear demisting 50, 55
Recharging the battery 197
Regeneration of the particle emissions filter 172
Reinitialising the electric windows 75
Reinitialising the remote control 71
Reinitialising the sunroof 82
Remote control 67-72
Removable screen (snow shield) 203
Removing a wheel 179
Removing the mat 99
Repair kit, puncture 174
Replacing bulbs 181-190

R Replacing fuses 191-195
Replacing the air filter 172
Replacing the oil filter 172
Replacing the passenger compartment filter 172
Replacing wiper blades 94
Resetting the service indicator ... 40
Resetting the trip recorder 42
Rev counter 26
Reversing camera 158
Reversing lamp 185, 187
Risk areas (update) 236
Roof bars 201
Routine checks 172, 173
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 163

S Screen, colour and mapping 229, 268
Screen, monochrome 282, 292, 294
Screen, monochrome C 43
Screen, multifunction 43
Screen, multifunction (with audio equipment) 45
Screen-wash reservoir 171
Screen menu map 268, 292, 294
Screenwash, front 93
Screenwash fluid level 171
Seat adjustment 60, 61
Seat belts 119-121
Seats, rear 64
Security bolts 180
Serial number, vehicle 221
Service indicator 39, 40
Servicing 24, 40
S Setting the clock 44, 46
Short-cut menus 230
Sidelamps 86, 181, 185, 187
Side repeater 185
Ski flap 98
SNOW MOTION 118
Spare wheel 177
Speed limiter 150
Speedometer 26
Stability control (ESP) 118
Starting the vehicle 70, 137
Steering lock 70
Steering mounted controls 228, 281
Steering wheel, fixed centred controls 148
Stopping the vehicle 70, 137
Stop & Start 30, 51, 55, 84, 141, 162, 172, 196
Storage compartments 99
Storing driving positions 63
Stowing rings 101
Sunroof 82
Sun visor 98
Suspension, electronic control 159
Synchronising the remote control 71
Synthesiser, voice 242
System, navigation 232
Systems, ASR and ESP 118

T Table of weights 208, 209, 212, 216
Tables of engines ... 207, 210, 211
Tables of fuses 191
Tank, fuel 85
T Technical data 207-211
Telephone 247, 289
Temperature, coolant 41
Temperature adjustment ... 49, 52
Temperature control for heated seats 62
Temporary tyre repair kit 174
TMC (Traffic info) 245
Tools 177
Total distance recorder 42
Towbar 200
Towing another vehicle 198
Traction control (ASR) 118
Traffic information (TA) 246, 259, 284
Traffic information (TMC) 245, 246
Trailer 200
Trip computer 29, 30
Trip distance recorder 42
Tyre pressures 221
Tyres 24
Tyre under-inflation detection 115

U Under-inflation (detection) 115
Unlocking 67
Unlocking from the inside 77
Update risk areas 236
USB player 286

V Vehicle configuration 45
Vehicle identification 221

V Ventilation 47, 48
Very cold protection 202

W Warning lamps 32-38
Wash-wipe, rear 92
Weights 208, 209, 212, 216
Welcome function 62
Welcome lighting 96
Wheel, changing 177
Window controls 75
Wiper, rear 92
Wiper control stalk 92, 93
Wipers 92, 93

X Xenon headlamps 181







This handbook describes all of the equipment available in the whole range.

Your vehicle will be fitted with some of this equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it is sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given without any obligation. Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the handbook.

This document is an integral part of your vehicle. It should be passed on to the new user in the event of sale or transfer.

Automobiles CITROËN declares, by application of the provisions of the European regulation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this regulation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this handbook is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles CITROËN.

For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, competence and equipment required, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

Printed in the EU
Anglais
03-12

Automobiles CITROËN
Siège social : 6 rue Fructidor - 75835 Paris Cedex 17 - France
TÉL. : +33 (0) 1 58 79 79 79 - www.citroën.fr
S.A. au capital de 16 000 000 € - R.C.S. Paris 642 050 199 - Siret 642 050 199 00990 - APE 741 J

12.C5.0040
Anglais

2012 – DOCUMENTATION DE BORD
4Dconcept
Diadeis
Edipro

CRÉATIVE TECHNOLOGIE

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Dynamic stability control (DSC/ASR)**	flashing.	The DSC/ASR regulation is operating.	The system optimises traction and improves the directional stability of the vehicle in the event of loss of grip or trajectory.
		fixed.	The DSC/ASR system has a fault.	Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Under-inflation**	fixed.	The pressure in one or more wheels is too low.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. This check should preferably be carried out when the tyres are cold.
		flashing then fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp.	The tyre pressure monitoring system has a fault or no sensor is detected on one of the wheels.	Under-inflation detection is not assured. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Deactivation of the automatic functions of the electric parking brake**	fixed.	The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" functions are deactivated or faulty.	Activate the function (according to country) via the vehicle configuration menu or contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop if automatic application / release is not possible. For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the corresponding section.

Service overdue

For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner flashes** to indicate that the service must be carried out as soon as possible.
Example: the service is overdue by 180 miles (300 km).
For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the display indicates -180 miles (-300 km).

A few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on**.

The distance remaining may be weighted by the time factor, depending on the type of driving.
Therefore, the spanner may also come on if you have exceeded the time interval since the last service, indicated in **the servicing and warranty booklet**.

Engine oil level indicator*

On versions fitted with an electric oil level indicator, the state of the engine oil level is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds, after the servicing information.

The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level correct



Oil level incorrect



This is indicated by the display of the message "Oil level incorrect" in the instrument panel screen, accompanied by the service warning lamp and an audible signal.

If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.

Refer to the "Checking levels" section.

Oil level indicator fault



This is signalled by the display of the message "Oil level measurement invalid" in the instrument panel.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a fault with the electric indicator, the oil level is no longer monitored.

If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located under the bonnet.

Refer to the "Checking levels" section.

* Depending on version.

DEACTIVATING THE PASSENGER'S FRONT AIRBAG

! Never install a rearward facing child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag. This could cause the death of the child or serious injury.

The warning label present on both sides of the passenger's sun visor repeats this advice. In line with current legislation, the following tables contain this warning in all of the languages required.









Passenger airbag OFF



For information on deactivating the passenger's front airbag, refer to the "Airbags" section.

AR	لإجلاس الطفل الوجه باتجاه الوراء على مقعد سيارة مجهّز بوسادة أمان هوائية أمامية مفعّلة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل أو بإصابات خطيرة لديه.
BG	НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това можеда причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на детето.
CS	NIKDY neumisťujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁŽNÉHO ZRANĚNÍ.
DA	Brug aldrig en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde der er beskyttet af en aktiv airbag. Død eller alvorlig skade på barnet kan forekomme.
DE	Verwenden Sie NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder Babyschale gegen die Fahrtrichtung bei AKTIVIERTEM Airbag, TOD oder ERNSTHAFTE VERLETZUNGEN können die Folge sein.
EL	Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ
EN	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur
ES	NO INSTALAR NUNCA EL SISTEMA DE RETENCIÓN PARA NIÑOS DE ESPALDAS AL SENTIDO DE LA CIRCULACIÓN SOBRE UN ASIENTO PROTEGIDO CON UN COJÍN INFLABLE FRONTAL (AIRBAG) ACTIVADO. ESTO PUEDE CAUSAR LA MUERTE DEL BEBE O HERIRLO GRAVEMENTE.
ET	Ärge kasutage kunagi lapse turvatooli seljaga sõidusuunas sõiduki istmel mis on kaitstud AKTIVEERITUD TURVAPADJAGA. See võib põhjustada lapsele RASKEID VIGASTUSI või SURMA.
FI	ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkä ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojana on käyttöön aktivoitu TURVATYYNY. Sen laukeaminen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.
FR	NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT
HR	NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TEŠKU OZLJEDU djeteta.
HU	SOHA ne használjon menetiránynak háttal beszerelt gyermekülést olyan ülésen, amely AKTIVÁLT ÁLLAPOTÚ (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGZSÁKKAL van védve. Ez a gyermek halálát vagy súlyos sérülését okozhatja.
IT	NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.
LT	NIEKADA neįrenkite vaiko prilaikymo priemonės su atgal atgręžtu vaiku ant sėdynės, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinės ORO PAGALVĖS. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.

LV	NAV PIEĻAUJAMS uzstādīt uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdeklīti priekšējā pasažiera vietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.
MT	Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahru lejn l-Airbag attiva, ghaliex tista' tikkawza korriment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla
NL	Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND ERNSTIG OF DODELIJK GEWOND raken.
NO	Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøreretningen i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.
PL	NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji "tyłem do kierunku jazdy"na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZOŁOWĄ PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZNĄ w stanie AKTYWNYM.W przeciwnym razie dziecko narażone będzie na ŚMIERĆ lub BARDZO POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA w momenicie wyzwolenia poduszki powietrznej
PT	NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada, num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.
RO	Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retinere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.
RU	ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенном ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ
SK	NIKDY nepoužívajte na prednom sedadle chránenom AKTÍVNYM AIRBAGOM detské zadržiavacie zariadenie umiestnené v proti smere jazdy. Môže to spôsobiť SMRŤ, alebo VÁŽNE ZRANENIE DIEŤAŤA.
SL	NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitev lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.
SR	NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedište koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.
SV	Använd ALDRIG en bakåtvänd barnstol i ett säte skyddat av en AKTIV AIRBAG framför det. Det kan orsaka ALLVARLIGA eller DÖDLIGA skador på barnet.
TR	KESİNLKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.

VII

TYRE UNDER-INFLATION DETECTION

System which automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving.

The system continuously monitors the pressures of the four tyres, as soon as the vehicle is moving.

A pressure sensor is located in the valve of a each tyres (except the spare wheel).

The system triggers an alert if a drop in pressure is detected in one or more tyres.

The tyre under-inflation detection system is an aid to driving which does not replace the need for the driver to be vigilant or to drive responsibly.

This system does not avoid the need to check the tyre pressures regularly (including the spare wheel) and before a long journey.

Driving with under-inflated tyres adversely affects road holding, extends braking distances and causes premature tyre wear, particularly under arduous conditions (vehicle loaded, high speed, long journey).

Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.

The tyre pressures for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label (see the "Identification markings" section).

The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres cold (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after driving for less then 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speed). Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the values indicated on the label.

Under-inflation alert



The alert is given by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal, and depending on equipment, the display of a message.

In the event of a problem on one of the tyres, the symbol or the message appears, according to equipment, to identify it.

- ☞ Reduce speed, avoid sudden steering movements or harsh brake applications.
- ☞ Stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

- ☞ If you have a compressor (the one in the temporary puncture repair kit for example), check the four tyre pressures when cold.

  If it is not possible to check the tyre pressures at the time, drive carefully at reduced speed.

  or
- ☞ In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (according to equipment).

The alert is maintained until the tyre or tyres concerned is reinflated, repaired or replaced.

The spare wheel (space-saver type or a steel rim) does not have a sensor.

! The loss of pressure detected does not always lead to visible deformation of the tyre. Do not rely on just a visual check.

Operating fault



The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp accompanied by the illumination of the "service" warning lamp indicates a fault with the system.

In this case, monitoring of the tyre pressures is not assured.

This alert is also displayed when one or more wheels is not fitted with a sensor (for example, a space-saver or steel spare wheel).

Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked or, following the repair of a puncture, to have the original wheel, equipped with a sensor, refitted.

! Any tyre repair or replacement on a wheel fitted with this system must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

If after changing a tyre, a wheel is not detected by your vehicle (fitting snow tyres for example), you must have the system reinitialised by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

TRAJECTORY CONTROL SYSTEMS

Anti-slip regulation (ASR) and dynamic stability control (DSC)

The anti-slip regulation (also known as traction control) optimises traction to prevent skidding of the wheels, by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine.

The electronic stability control acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to keep the vehicle on the trajectory required by the driver, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Intelligent traction control system ("Snow motion")

Your vehicle has a system to improve traction on snow: **intelligent traction control**.

This system detects situations of low adhesion that might make moving off and progress difficult on deep fresh snow or compacted snow.

In these situations the **intelligent traction control** system regulates the amount of wheel slip to optimise the traction and trajectory control of your vehicle.

For vehicles with Hydractive III + suspension, manual adjustment of ground clearance to the intermediate position improves further the ability to make progress in deep snow (see the relevant paragraph).

The use of snow tyres is strongly recommended on surfaces with low adhesion.

Activation

These systems are activated automatically each time the vehicle is started.

They come into operation in the event of a grip or trajectory problem.



This is indicated by flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

Deactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground...), it may be advisable to deactivate the DSC and ASR, so that the wheels can turn freely and regain grip.



Reactivate the systems as soon as the level of grip permits.



☞ Press this button.

The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

The DSC and ASR systems no longer act on the operation of the engine and on the brakes in the event of a involuntary change of trajectory.

Reactivation

The systems are reactivated automatically each time the ignition is switched back on or from 30 mph (50 km/h).

Below 30 mph (50 km/h), you can reactivate them manually:



☞ Press this button again.

Operating fault



Illumination of this warning lamp and the lamp in the deactivation button, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, indicate a fault with the system.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

DSC/ASR

The DSC and ASR systems offer increased safety in normal driving, but they should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep the DSC and ASR systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.

The correct operation of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations regarding as much the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components as the assembly and repair procedures used by CITROËN dealers.

To benefit in full from the effectiveness of the DSC and ASR systems in wintry conditions, the vehicle must be fitted with four snow tyres, allowing the the vehicle to retain neutral behaviour on the road.

After an impact, have these systems checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE



The electric parking brake combines 2 operating modes:

- **AUTOMATIC**

  Automatic application when the engine stops and automatic release on use of the accelerator (automatic operation by default),
- **MANUAL**

  Manual application / release of the parking brake is always possible by pulling control lever **A** while pressing the brake pedal.

Automatic operation

Application with the engine off

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is automatically applied when the engine is switched off**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A** coming on,
- this warning lamp in the instrument panel coming on,
- display of a message "Parking brake on" in the instrument panel screen.

The noise of operation will confirm to you the application/ release of your electric parking brake.

! Before leaving the vehicle, check that warning lamp **P** and the warning lamp in the instrument panel are on fixed (not flashing).

Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.

Application with the engine running

With the engine running and the vehicle stationary, in order to immobilise the vehicle you need to manually apply the parking brake by **pulling** on control lever **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A** coming on,
- this warning lamp in the instrument panel coming on,
- display of a message "Parking brake on" in the instrument panel screen.

When the driver's door is opened, a beep is heard and a message displayed if the parking brake has not been applied.

! Before leaving the vehicle, check that warning lamp **P** and the warning lamp in the instrument panel are on fixed (not flashing).

IX

Release

The electric parking brake **releases automatically and progressively** when you press the accelerator:

- ☞ with a **manual gearbox** (**first gear or reverse gear engaged**), press down fully on the clutch pedal then press on the accelerator pedal and move off.
- ☞ with an **automatic gearbox**, accelerate with the selector in position **D**, **M** or **R**.

Full release of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- (P) - warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A** going off,
- (!) - this warning lamp in the instrument panel going off,
- display of a message "Parking brake off" in the instrument panel screen.

When stationary, with the engine running, do not press the accelerator pedal unnecessarily (particularly when starting the engine, including in neutral), as you may release the parking brake.

Do not place any object (packet of cigarettes, telephone...) between the gear lever and the electric parking brake control.

Activation / Deactivation of the automatic functions

Depending on the country of sale, automatic application when switching off the engine and automatic release when moving off can be deactivated. The activation / deactivation is done in the instrument panel screen configuration menu. Select "Vehicle parameters / Comfort / Auto parking brake".

AUTO (P) OFF

Deactivation of these functions is signalled by this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

With the automatic functions deactivated, the parking brake must be applied and released manually.

! In some special circumstances, with the engine not running, (towing, icy conditions...) the automatic parking brake can be released manually, with the key in the running position.

If the configuration menu does not have the option to activate / deactivate the automatic functions, this can be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Manual operation

Manual application / release of the parking brake is always possible.



Application

With the vehicle stationary, to apply the parking brake whether the engine is running or off, **pull** on control lever **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- (P) - warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A** coming on,
- (!) - this warning lamp in the instrument panel coming on,
- display of a message "Parking brake on" in the instrument panel screen.

! When the driver's door is opened with the engine running, a message is displayed accompanied by an audible signal if the parking brake has not been applied.

Release

With the ignition on or the engine running, to release the parking brake, press on the brake pedal, **push then release** control lever **A**.

The full application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A** going off,
- this warning lamp in the instrument panel going off,
- display of a message "Parking brake released" in the instrument panel screen.

If you push control lever **A** without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and the message "Foot on brake" will be displayed in the instrument panel.

When stationary, with the engine running, do not press the accelerator pedal unnecessarily, as you may release the parking brake.

Maximum application

If necessary, you can make a **maximum application** of the parking brake. It is obtained by means of a **long pull** on control lever **A**, until you see the message "Max application of the parking brake" and a beep is heard.

Maximum application is essential:

- in the case of a vehicle towing a caravan or a trailer, if the automatic functions are activated but you are applying the parking brake manually,
- when the effective gradient you are parked on is variable (e.g. on a ferry, in a lorry, during towing).
- in the case of towing, a loaded vehicle or parking on a gradient, turn the front wheels towards the pavement and engage a gear when you park.
- after a maximum application, the release time will be longer.

Particular situations

In certain situations (starting the engine...), the parking brake can automatically alter its level of application. This is normal operation.

To advance your vehicle a few centimetres without starting the engine, but with the ignition on, press on the brake pedal and release the parking brake **by pushing** then **releasing** control lever **A**.

The full release of the parking brake is confirmed by the warning lamp **P** in the control lever and the warning lamp in the instrument panel going off and the display of a message "Parking brake off" in the instrument panel screen.

To ensure correct operation of the parking brake and therefore your safety, the number of successive application/release operations is limited to eight.

If this number is exceeded, you are warned by the message "Parking brake faulty" and a warning lamp flashes.

Dynamic emergency braking



In the event of a failure of the vehicle's main braking system or in an exceptional situation (e.g. driver taken ill, under instruction, etc) pull and hold control lever **A** to stop the vehicle.

The dynamic stability control system (DSC) provides stability during dynamic emergency braking.

If there is a fault with the dynamic emergency braking, one of the following messages will be displayed in the instrument panel screen:

- "Parking brake faulty".
- "Parking brake control faulty".

If a failure of the DSC system is signalled by the illumination of this warning lamp, then braking stability is not guaranteed. In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull release" actions on control lever **A**.

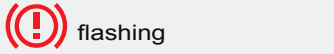
The dynamic emergency braking should only be used in exceptional circumstances.

If it is not possible to immobilise the vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Operating faults

If any of these instances arises, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

	SITUATION	CONSEQUENCES
1	Electric parking brake problem and display of message **"Parking brake faulty"** and the following warning lamps: 	If the electric parking brake problem warning lamp and the service warning lamp come on, position the vehicle in a safe location (on flat ground, with a gear engaged).
2	Display of the messages **"Parking brake faulty"** and **"Anti roll-back fault"** and of the following warning lamps: 	- The automatic functions are deactivated. - The hill start assist is not available. - The electric parking brake is only available manually.
3	Display of messages **"Parking brake faulty"** and **"Anti roll-back fault"** and of the following warning lamp: 	- Manual release of the electric parking brake is not available. - The hill start assist is not available. - The automatic functions and manual application are still available.

	SITUATION	CONSEQUENCES
4	Display of messages "**Parking brake faulty**" and "**Anti roll-back fault**" and of the following warning lamps: 	- The automatic functions are deactivated. - The hill start assist is not available. To apply the electric parking brake: ☞ Immobilise the vehicle and switch off the ignition ☞ Pull the control lever for at least 5 seconds or until maximum application. ☞ Switch on the ignition and check that the electric parking brake warning lamps are on. - Application may take longer than in normal operation. - If warning lamp (!) flashes or if the warning lamps do not come on when the ignition is switched on, this method does not work. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. To release the electric parking brake: ☞ Switch on the ignition. ☞ Push the control lever and hold it for approximately 3 seconds.
5	Display of message "**Parking brake control faulty – automatic mode activated**" and the following warning lamps: 	- Only the functions for automatic application on switching off the engine and automatic release on acceleration are available. - Manual application/release of the electric parking brake and dynamic emergency braking are unavailable.
6	Display of message "**Parking brake faulty**" and of the following warning lamp: 	- Application of the parking brake is not guaranteed. - The parking brake is temporarily unavailable. It this situation arises: ☞ Wait approximately 3 minutes. ☞ After 3 minutes, if the warning lamp is still flashing, try to reinitialise the parking brake, either by pushing and releasing the control **A** while pressing the brake pedal or by means of a long pull on control lever **A**.
7	Battery problem 	- Illumination of the battery warning lamp makes it essential to stop the vehicle as soon as traffic allows. Stop and immobilise your vehicle. - Apply the electric parking brake before switching off the engine.

IX

Engine oil level

The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel for vehicles with an electric oil level gauge, or using the dipstick.

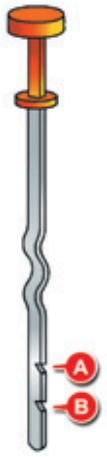
To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine having been off for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). CITROËN recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3 000 miles (5 000 kms).

Checking using the dipstick

Refer to the "Petrol engine" or "Diesel engine" section for the location of the dipstick in the engine compartment of your vehicle.

- ☞ Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and remove it completely.
- ☞ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean non-fluffy cloth.
- ☞ Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between the marks **A** and **B**.



A = MAX

B = MIN

If you find that the level is above the **A** mark or below the **B** mark, **do not start the engine**.

- If the level is above the **MAX** mark (risk of damage to the engine), contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
- If the level is below the **MIN** mark, you must top up the engine oil.

Oil grade

Before topping-up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Topping up the engine oil level

Refer to the "Petrol engine" or "Diesel engine" section for the location of the oil filler cap in the engine compartment of your vehicle.

- ☞ Unscrew the oil filler cap to reveal the filler aperture.
- ☞ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- ☞ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ☞ Add more oil if necessary.
- ☞ After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

After topping up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping up.

Engine oil change

Refer to the maintenance and warranty guide for details of the interval for this operation.

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emission control system, never use additives in the engine oil.